



1

System Specifications

3

KNX IoT

10

KNX IoT Point API

5

2

3

4

5

Summary

6

This document is part of the KNX IoT Standard. This chapter describes the Point API, the device configuration, and the runtime interworking.

7

8

This document is a KNX Approved Standard.

9

10 **Document updates**

| Version | Date | Modifications |
|---------|------------|---|
| 0.1.0 | 2021.03.22 | - Document creation. |
| 1.0.0 | 2021.11.01 | - Draft for Voting |
| 1.0.0 | 2022.04.05 | - Creation of the Approved Standard |
| 1.1.0 | 2023.01.20 | - Errata document for certification |
| 1.1.0 | 2023.05.10 | - Creation of the Approved Standard |
| 1.1.0 | 2023.06.21 | - Publication of the Approved Standard. |

11

12 **References**

- [01] Chapter 3/10/1 KNX IoT Introduction
- [02] Chapter 3/10/2 KNX IoT Constants
- [03] Chapter 3/10/3 KNX IoT Information Model
- [04] Chapter 3/10/4 KNX IoT 3rd Party API
- [05] Chapter 3/10/5 KNX IoT Point API
- [06] Chapter 3/1/2 Glossary
- [07] Chapter 7/20/1 Lighting Sensors
- [08] Chapter 7/20/2 Lighting Actuators
- [09] Chapter 3/5/2 Management Procedures
- [10] Chapter 3/5/1 Resources
- [11] Chapter 3/3/7 Application Layer
- [12] Chapter 3/10/6 KNX IoT Router
- [13] SPAKE2+, an Augmented PAKE (IETF Draft: draft-bar-cfrg-spake2plus-04)

Filename: 3_10_5 KNX IoT Point API.docx
Version: 1.1.0
Status: KNX Approved Standard
Save date: 2023.06.21
Number of pages: 164

| | | |
|----|--|-----------|
| 13 | Contents | |
| 14 | 1 KNX IoT Point API..... | 6 |
| 15 | 1.1 Introduction..... | 6 |
| 16 | 1.2 System Entities | 7 |
| 17 | 1.3 Device Model..... | 8 |
| 18 | 1.4 Conventions used in this document | 9 |
| 19 | 1.4.1 Requirements Language..... | 9 |
| 20 | 1.4.2 Conformance..... | 9 |
| 21 | 1.4.3 Number Format..... | 10 |
| 22 | 1.4.4 Uniform Resource Identifiers | 10 |
| 23 | 1.4.5 Uniform Resource Name | 10 |
| 24 | 2 Point API Specification..... | 11 |
| 25 | 2.1 Application Protocol..... | 11 |
| 26 | 2.2 Overview..... | 11 |
| 27 | 2.2.1 Common Data Model..... | 11 |
| 28 | 2.2.2 Application Layer Service Mapping..... | 11 |
| 29 | 2.2.3 Application Protocol | 12 |
| 30 | 2.2.4 Content-Format | 12 |
| 31 | 2.3 System Design | 13 |
| 32 | 2.3.1 Events and Group Communication..... | 13 |
| 33 | 2.3.2 Brokerless System..... | 13 |
| 34 | 2.3.3 Message Broker-based System | 14 |
| 35 | 2.3.4 Device Linking..... | 16 |
| 36 | 2.4 Device Bootstrapping and Configuration | 17 |
| 37 | 2.4.1 Introduction..... | 17 |
| 38 | 2.4.2 Device Individualization Procedure..... | 18 |
| 39 | 2.4.3 Device Configuration Procedure..... | 19 |
| 40 | 2.5 Resource Model | 21 |
| 41 | 2.5.1 Introduction..... | 21 |
| 42 | 2.5.2 Resources (Points) | 21 |
| 43 | 2.5.3 Interface Types (if) | 23 |
| 44 | 2.5.4 Device Discovery Resource (.well-known/core) | 27 |
| 45 | 2.5.5 Device API Resource (.well-known/knx) | 28 |
| 46 | 2.5.6 Device Object Resource (dev) | 33 |
| 47 | 2.5.7 Function Point Table (fp)..... | 36 |
| 48 | 2.5.8 Application Program Object Resource (ap)..... | 50 |
| 49 | 2.5.9 S-Mode Messaging Resource (.knx)..... | 53 |
| 50 | 2.5.10 Functional Block Resource (f)..... | 55 |
| 51 | 2.5.11 Parameter and Diagnostic Property Resource (p)..... | 55 |
| 52 | 2.5.12 Subscription Resource (sub) | 64 |
| 53 | 2.5.13 Datatype Mapping..... | 64 |
| 54 | 2.6 Runtime Interworking..... | 69 |
| 55 | 2.6.1 Discovery | 69 |
| 56 | 2.6.2 Device IP Address..... | 78 |
| 57 | 2.6.3 Unicast Operation | 79 |
| 58 | 2.6.4 Multicast Operation | 83 |
| 59 | 2.6.5 Multicast Group IP Addresses | 84 |
| 60 | 2.6.6 Message Flow Control | 85 |
| 61 | 2.6.7 Creating, Updating, and Deleting Resources..... | 85 |

| | | | |
|-----|----------|--|------------|
| 62 | 2.6.8 | Pagination | 87 |
| 63 | 2.6.9 | S-Mode Group Communication..... | 89 |
| 64 | 2.6.10 | Point Publish/Subscribe | 92 |
| 65 | 3 | Security..... | 94 |
| 66 | 3.1 | Introduction..... | 94 |
| 67 | 3.2 | Device Identity Enrollment..... | 95 |
| 68 | 3.2.1 | Common Requirements | 95 |
| 69 | 3.2.2 | Device Authentication | 96 |
| 70 | 3.2.3 | Domain CA Provisioning..... | 96 |
| 71 | 3.2.4 | Operational Device Certificate Enrollment (Pull Certificate) | 96 |
| 72 | 3.2.5 | Management Client as Registrar (Push Certificate)..... | 97 |
| 73 | 3.3 | Device Identity Certificates | 100 |
| 74 | 3.3.1 | Manufacturer Device Certificates (IDevID) | 100 |
| 75 | 3.3.2 | Operational Device Certificates (LDevID)..... | 101 |
| 76 | 3.4 | Certificate Validation..... | 102 |
| 77 | 3.4.1 | General Requirements..... | 102 |
| 78 | 3.4.2 | Device Certificate Cipher Suites..... | 102 |
| 79 | 3.5 | Device Access Control | 103 |
| 80 | 3.5.1 | General Requirements..... | 103 |
| 81 | 3.5.2 | Trust List Resource (auth/crts)..... | 103 |
| 82 | 3.5.3 | Access Scope | 104 |
| 83 | 3.5.4 | Device Access Control List Resource (auth/at) | 105 |
| 84 | 3.5.5 | Revocation List | 109 |
| 85 | 3.6 | OSCORE Application Layer Security | 109 |
| 86 | 3.6.1 | General Requirements..... | 109 |
| 87 | 3.6.2 | OSCORE Key Configuration Resource Object | 110 |
| 88 | 3.6.3 | Password Authenticated Access Token Enrollment | 112 |
| 89 | 3.6.4 | Message Replay Protection..... | 121 |
| 90 | 3.6.5 | Message Processing | 125 |
| 91 | 3.6.6 | OSCORE Cipher Suites | 126 |
| 92 | 4 | Software Update | 129 |
| 93 | 4.1 | Introduction..... | 129 |
| 94 | 4.2 | Software Update Client Resource (swu)..... | 129 |
| 95 | 4.3 | Software Update Modes | 135 |
| 96 | 4.3.1 | Overview | 135 |
| 97 | 4.3.2 | Software Update Query Resource Object | 136 |
| 98 | 4.3.3 | Software Update Query Parameter "p", "ps", and "pkg" | 137 |
| 99 | 4.3.4 | Software Update PULL..... | 138 |
| 100 | 4.3.5 | Software Update PUSH | 142 |
| 101 | 5 | Profiles..... | 144 |
| 102 | 5.1 | KNX IoT Point API Device..... | 144 |
| 103 | 5.1.1 | Default Configuration State | 144 |
| 104 | 5.1.2 | Commissioned Mode | 144 |
| 105 | 5.1.3 | Device Resource List | 146 |
| 106 | 5.2 | CBOR Encoding | 148 |
| 107 | 5.2.1 | Function Point Tables, Functional Blocks, and Properties | 148 |
| 108 | 5.2.2 | Software Update Package Query | 148 |
| 109 | 5.2.3 | Security | 148 |

| | | |
|-----|--|------------|
| 110 | 6 Examples | 150 |
| 111 | 6.1 DEVICE POINT LIST EXAMPLES | 150 |
| 112 | 6.1.1 Device Point List Example with OSCORE and (D)TLS | 150 |
| 113 | 6.2 DEVICE CONFIGURATION EXAMPLE | 153 |
| 114 | 6.2.1 Full Download Example | 153 |
| 115 | 6.2.2 Partial Download Example | 157 |
| 116 | 6.3 DATA ENCRYPTION/DECRYPTION EXAMPLE..... | 161 |
| 117 | 6.3.1 OSCORE Unicast..... | 161 |
| 118 | 6.3.2 OSCORE Multicast..... | 163 |
| 119 | | |
| 120 | | |

1 KNX IoT Point API

1.1 Introduction

KNX IoT uses Internet Protocol (IP) suite standards for the transmission of KNX IoT application layer data across IP networks.

Physical media like Ethernet (IEEE 802.3), Wi-Fi (802.11), or WPAN (802.15.4) carry KNX IoT packets. These may contain unicast TCP or UDP frames or multicast UDP frame transmission of KNX IoT application data. KNX IoT application data is agnostic to the underlying communication layers. Hence, it is possible to send KNX IoT messages over non-IP transport bindings such as NB IoT, or BLE. However, this is out-of-scope of this specification.

A typical (IP-based) interworking infrastructure allows heterogeneous data link media to work seamlessly with each other. The Point API maps KNX AL data to a RESTful resource model, and CBOR/JSON-based data representation is used to communicate over IP. Using this API, a client can read/write values or subscribe to Point events (e.g., switch on/off). The KNX IoT Point API is based on the following building blocks:

1. Discovery

Discovery (of resources, including devices) can be made with unicast or multicast. Resource discovery in CoAP (CoRE) is accomplished using a "/.well-known/core" resource URI that returns a list of links about resources (e.g., *Functional Block Properties*) hosted by that server that matches filter attributes.

2. S-Mode Messaging

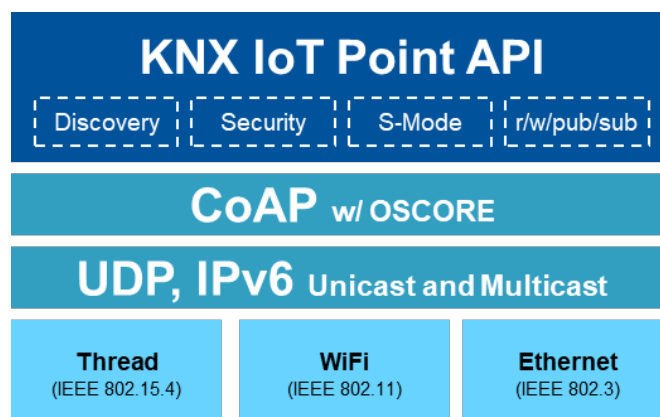
The S-Mode messaging uses a secure message-oriented communication pattern for group communication where a producer sends a message to notify consumers of a change in the domain. A tool, or rather a Management Client (MaC), configures group communication events via group tables.

3. Point Read, Write, and Publish/Subscribe

Parameter and diagnostic Properties are used for sensor, actuator, parameter, and diagnostic values, such as getting the current sensor value or setting a setpoint. They are addressed by URIs, can be directly accessed with the corresponding standard CoAP access method GET (read values), and can be manipulated with PUT/POST (write values). Additionally, also subscribing to Property values is possible.

4. Security

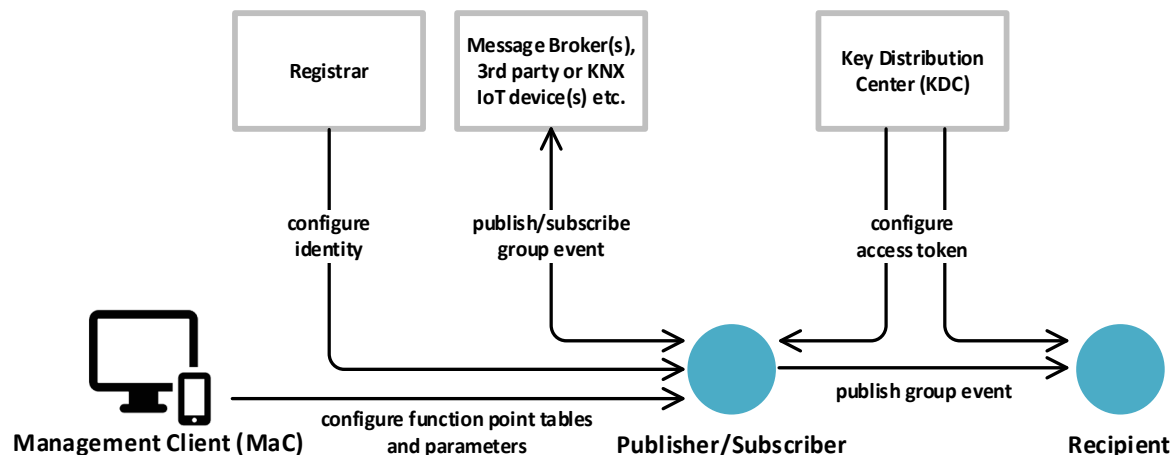
Group communication and access to the parameter and diagnostic Properties are secured by OSCORE or (D)TLS. OSCORE (application layer security) is used for S-Mode messaging, Point read, write, and publish/subscribe. (D)TLS (transport layer security) is mainly used for mutually authenticated pre-shared key distribution. The initial bootstrapping of pre-shared OSCORE keys and operational device certificates bases on an out-of-band (QR code, NFC, or BLE, etc.) authentication code as a proof of possession.



154

155

Figure 1 – KNX IoT Point API

156 **1.2 System Entities**

157

158

Figure 2 – System Entities

159 Some of the above-used terms are detailed underneath with additional KNX IoT Point API information.
 160 The general term definitions can be found in clause [02].

161 The **Key Distribution Center (KDC)** enables and enforces the authorized access of joining KNX IoT
 162 devices to access the related KNX Group Communication. Multiple installations can be associated with
 163 the same Authorization & Group Manager, which might be a service entity part of a MaC (Management
 164 Client) or an independent service.

165 The **Message Broker** is an intermediary that can provide data marshaling, routing, message translation,
 166 and persistence. It receives messages from a Publisher and delivers them to all related Recipients. A KNX
 167 Classic to KNX IoT Router (see also [12]) is an example of a Message Broker.

168 **Publishers** and **Subscribers** are KNX IoT devices that are loosely coupled and often do not know each
 169 other. Their primary relationship is that they are configured with the same *Group Address*. In KNX IoT:

- 170 • the Publisher sends Group Messages to Subscribers (e.g., via Message Broker). It represents a
 171 particular information source, for example, a light switch status;
- 172 • the Subscriber is the consumer of Group Messages from a Publisher. They are CoAP Clients but
 173 are Group Message Recipients;
- 174 • the Publishers and Subscribers use CoAP to communicate;
- 175 • A Recipient is a device that receives Group Messages from a Publisher. If the Recipient is not a
 176 Subscriber simultaneously, then the Recipient endpoint is a static configuration in the Publisher
 177 Function Point table.

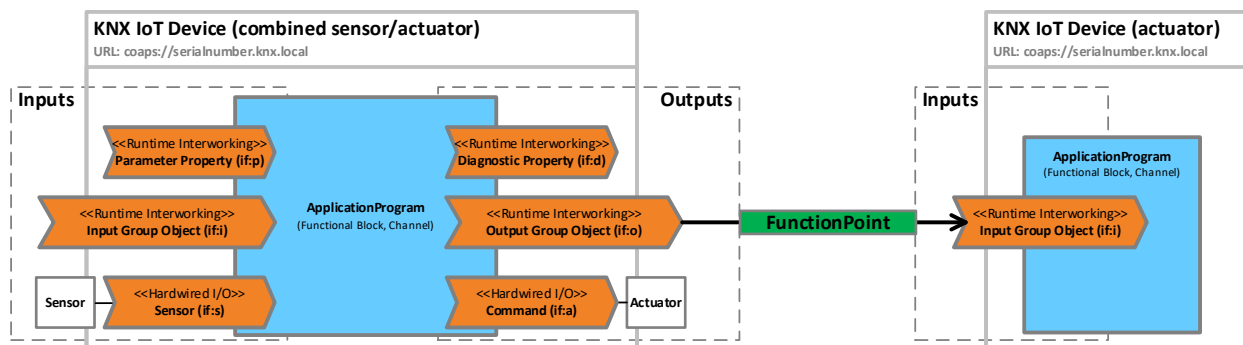
178 The **Registrar** decides whether a new KNX IoT device can join the domain; it:

- 179 • might be a part of the MaC (Management Client), containing a mixture of Backlist rules,
 180 Whitelists (for known installed devices), and stateful tracking to protect the KNX System;
- 181 • subsequently configures domain CA certificates followed by the operational device certificate on
 182 KNX IoT devices.

183

184 1.3 Device Model

185 The following figure depicts the KNX IoT Device Model, which is, from a high-level perspective, the
 186 same as the classic KNX Device Model.



187
 188 **Figure 3 - KNX IoT Device Model**

189 A KNX IoT device may have physical inputs and/or outputs.

- 190 • A physical input may be internal to the device or have an external sensor connected via a terminal
- 191 block.
- 192 • A physical output may be internal to the device or have an external actuator connected via a
- 193 terminal.

194 A KNX IoT device has at least one logical input and/or output. Such a logical input or output is called
 195 *Group Object (GO)*. The *Group Object* has a unique identifier with reference to the device. When a
 196 *Group Address* is assigned to a *Group Object*, the *Group Object* becomes a member of that *Function*
 197 *Point* identified by the *Group Address*. A *Group Address* is the instantiation of a *Function Point* and is
 198 unique in an installation.

199 An input *Group Object* can be assigned to one or more *Function Points*.

200 An output *Group Object* can be assigned to one or more *Function Points* but can only send information to
 201 one *Function Point*.

202 For configuration purposes, a KNX IoT device may have parameters to determine specific behavior
 203 concerning the whole device or a device Channel. Each *Parameter Property* has a unique identifier with
 204 reference to the device.

205 For diagnostic purposes, a KNX IoT device may provide diagnostic information concerning the whole
 206 device or a device Channel. Each *Diagnostic Property* has a unique identifier with reference to the device.

207 *Parameter* and *diagnostic Properties* use the same communication mechanisms and are not differentiated,
 208 and both are named *Property* in the following.

209 A *Group Object* is a specialization of a *Property*. A *Group Object* is designed for runtime communication
 210 in a *Brokerless* or *Broker-based* system (see clause 2.3). A simple *property* is only designed and intended
 211 for configuration or diagnostic purposes, and it supports only simple point-to-point communication
 212 methods (read-, write- and subscription-commands).

213 A KNX IoT device may have *Group Objects* and *parameter* and *diagnostic Properties* that belong
 214 together. Where *Group Objects* and *Properties* belong together, these MAY be declared as a *Channel*.

215 A device may have *Channels* with different sets of *Group Objects* and *Properties* and/or *Channels* that
 216 have identical sets of *Group Objects* and *Properties*. Devices may have one or more *Channels* that are
 217 functionally identical and have the same type of *Group Objects* and *Properties*.

218 Apart from *Channels*, a KNX IoT device may have *Group Objects*, *parameter*, and *diagnostic Properties*
 219 that apply to the whole device. These are associated with the control function of the whole device.

- 220 If and how *Group Objects* and *Properties* are declared as a Channel is up to the manufacturer designing
221 the device.
- 222 For certification purposes, a Channel may be declared to include at least one *Functional Block* describing
223 the function of that Channel (see [03] "KNX Information Model").
- 224 The KNX Specification defines *Functional Blocks* for different applications. *Functional Blocks*
225 encompass inputs and outputs as well as parameter properties with generic names and identifiers.
- 226 The *Functional Blocks* determine the Interworking between products of different manufacturers. More
227 than one *Functional Block* type may be required to describe the functionality of a Channel.
- 228 A KNX IoT device has a unique identifier called *KNX Individual Address*. The *KNX Individual Address*
229 is assigned and is unique with respect to the project.
- 230 A KNX IoT device SHALL have a globally unique identifier assigned by the manufacturer called *KNX*
231 *Serial Number*.
- 232 The hardware (MAC-) or network (IP-) address of the device SHALL NOT be used as *KNX Individual*
233 *Address*.
- 234 The following table summarizes the above-mentioned core elements and their associated unique
235 identifiers.

236 **Table 1 – Core elements and identifiers**

| Core element | Unique Identifier | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| | Name | Scope |
| Device | KNX Serial Number | globally unique |
| | KNX Individual Address | unique within a project |
| Functional Block | Functional Block ID | unique per functionality |
| Function Point | Group Address | unique within a project |
| Group Object (GO) | GO identifier | unique per device |
| Parameter / Diagnostic Property | Property identifier | unique per device |

- 237
- 238 **1.4 Conventions used in this document**
- 239 **1.4.1 Requirements Language**
- 240 The keywords "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "NOT
241 RECOMMENDED", "MAY", "MANDATORY", and "OPTIONAL" in this specification are to be
242 interpreted as described in [RFC2119].
- 243 **1.4.2 Conformance**
- 244 For all resources, their expected request/ response document formats and content are not described to the
245 full extent in this specification. As described in clause "Document Structure" in [01], whether an element
246 is mandatory or optional can be found in the JSON-schema description as an electronic document.
- 247 The URL <https://schema.knx.org> allows retrieval of the most recent electronic documents of the KNX IoT
248 Point API. Older versions are also available.

249 **1.4.3 Number Format**

250 All numbers in this document are assumed to be decimal unless indicated with a prefix. Hexadecimal
251 numbers are prefixed with the designation "0x", and binary numbers are prefixed with the designation
252 "0b". Binary numbers are defined as successive groups of 4 bits, separated by a space character from the
253 most significant bit to the least significant bit (0b1111 1111). Byte strings are notated in one of the base
254 encodings, without padding, enclosed in single quotes, prefixed by >h< for base16, >b32< for base32,
255 >h32< for base32hex, >b64< for base64. For example, the byte string 0x12345678 could be written as
256 h'12345678'.

257 **1.4.4 Uniform Resource Identifiers**

258 A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) identifies a logical resource. This document uses the CoAP URL
259 for link formats which comprises scheme, authority, path, and query values: scheme ":" ["/" authority]
260 path ["?" query]. The authority part SHALL contain either an FQDN or an IP address.

261 The following link formats are used in this document:

262 Absolute Link with schema and authority: coap://{ip-address or fqdn}:{port}/base-path/path1?query

263 Absolute path that starts at the root path ("/"): /base-path/path?query

264 Relative path that starts after a base path (without "/" at the beginning): path?query

265 **1.4.5 Uniform Resource Name**

266 A Uniform Resource Name (URN) identifies a logical resource in a permanent way, even after that
267 resource does not exist anymore. This document uses the URN format as defined in [RFC2141], which
268 comprises the namespace identifier "knx" and namespace-specific identifiers: "urn:knx" [":" namespace-
269 specific-identifier].

270 The following URN formats are used in this document:

271 Absolute URN with the namespace identifier: urn:knx:namespace-specific-identifier

272 Relative URN without namespace identifier (with ":" at the beginning): :namespace-specific-identifier

273 **2 Point API Specification**

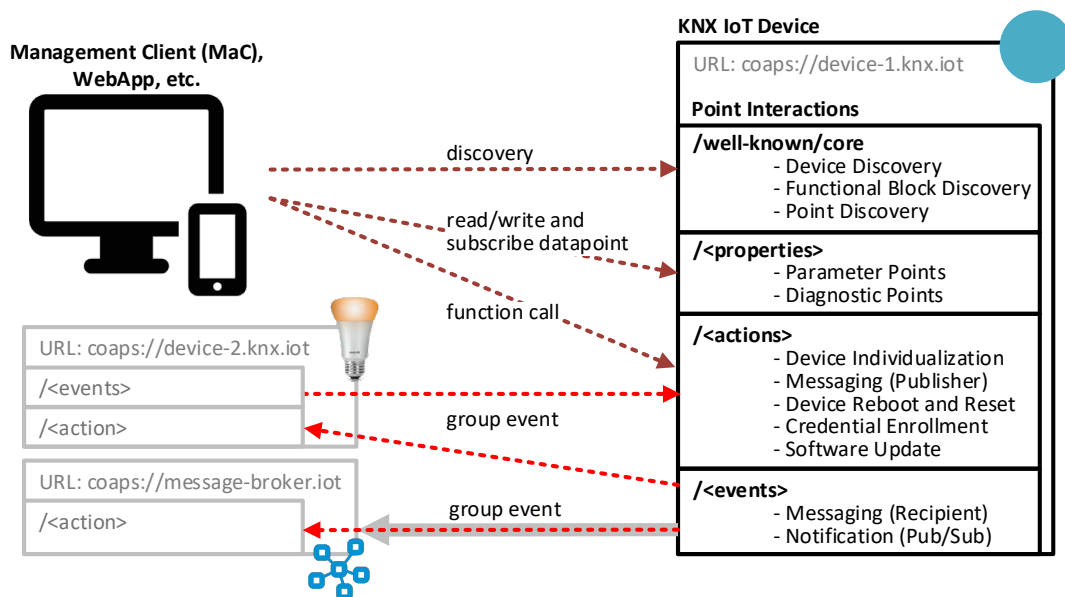
274 **2.1 Application Protocol**

275 This version of the KNX IoT Point API specification solely considers the use of CoAP as an application
 276 protocol. The below specifications and examples, therefore, focus on CoAP. Indications for other
 277 application protocols may be added as these are added to this specification.

278 **2.2 Overview**

279 **2.2.1 Common Data Model**

280 The following clauses describe a standard data model and API for KNX IoT devices that represent a
 281 contract for the interworking between devices and, in addition, between devices and infrastructure
 282 (e.g., Management Client, Message Broker, etc.). For a semantic description of instances of the API
 283 (project export), KNX IoT adopts the W3C WoT interactions model for Points that exchange data via IP
 284 interworking infrastructure. The Thing Description [TD] is a central building block in the W3C Web of
 285 Things (WoT). The TD provides a framework for semantic metadata for the device itself, an interaction
 286 model based on WoT's PropertyAffordances, ActionAffordances, and EventAffordances paradigm, a
 287 semantic schema to make data models machine-processable and features for Web Linking to express
 288 relations among devices and Points. For example, the "/.well-known/core" URI is an ActionAffordance
 289 with a default entry point for discovery purposes, or a PropertyAffordance is usually mapped to a
 290 parameter and diagnostic Property. The TD is the glue between KNX IoT device data and the KNX
 291 domain model (see [03] "KNX Information Model").



292
 293 **Figure 4 – Point Interactions**

294 **2.2.2 Application Layer Service Mapping**

295 The KNX application layer provides many application services to the application process. Application
 296 processes in different devices interoperate by using services from the application layer. Depending on the
 297 communication mode, various application layer services are available. KNX IoT only takes over the core
 298 functionality of a subset of existing KNX application layer services. These service functionalities are
 299 mapped to REST calls which can be described as PropertyAffordances, ActionAffordances, or
 300 EventAffordances, for example, for a semantic project export or device descriptions (see [03] "KNX
 301 Information Model"). The following clause explains how existing KNX application layer services are
 302 mapped to service discovery, PropertyAffordances, ActionAffordances, and EventAffordances in KNX
 303 IoT.

304 The A_IndividualAddress_Read- and A_IndividualAddress_Write-services, for example, are used to find
305 a device within a system and to change the device address. These services are used with broadcast
306 communication, and the communication partner is not identified in this service., i.e., the partner device is
307 enabling its *Programming Mode*, e.g., by pressing a programming button on that device. In KNX IoT, the
308 service is split into a discovery ActionAffordance (discovery phase: DNS or GET coap://{ipv6-
309 multicast}/.well-known/core?if=urn:knx:if.pm) and a second subsequent authorized ActionAffordance
310 call to change the device address (POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx/ia).

311 PropertyAffordances expose the internal state of a device that can be directly accessed (read) and
312 optionally manipulated (write) on parameter and diagnostic Properties. Devices can also choose to make
313 parameter and diagnostic Properties subscribable (observe) by pushing the new state after a change. PUT
314 and GET on Properties are used instead of the KNX Classic Data Property services, such as
315 A_PropertyValue_Read or A_PropertyValue_Write.

316 ActionAffordances offer device functions, and these functions may manipulate the internal state of a
317 device in a way that is impossible through setting Properties. Examples are changing internal state that is
318 not exposed as PropertyAffordances (e.g., A Restart-PDU), changing multiple Properties, or changing
319 Properties over time.

320 An EventAffordance describes event sources that asynchronously push messages. Hence, event-oriented
321 runtime communication is mapped to EventAffordances in the sending device and ActionAffordances in
322 the receiving device. Here not state, but state transitions (events) are communicated (e.g., "light switch
323 ON"). Events may be triggered by an internal state change that is not exposed as PropertyAffordance,
324 e.g., a push button event to switch from Off to On. POST is used for Group Objects instead of KNX
325 Classic A_GroupValue services.

326 2.2.3 Application Protocol

327 This document uses CoAP [RFC7252] as a MANDATORY application protocol. CoAP is a reliable
328 transport that can preserve packet ordering and handles message duplication. However, the Point API
329 specification is not limited to CoAP. Some device profiles MAY implement a CoAP and an HTTP
330 interface. This enables an HTTP client to access data on a KNX IoT device without implementing a
331 CoAP communication stack. However, how an HTTP request is mapped to a CoAP request and how a
332 CoAP response is mapped back to an HTTP response is out-of-scope of this document, but an HTTP
333 implementation SHOULD follow the guidelines described in [RFC8075].

334 2.2.4 Content-Format

335 KNX IoT device resources SHALL support the application/link format, the application/octet-stream
336 format, or the Concise Binary Object Representation (CBOR) format [RFC8949]. The CoAP Content-
337 Format ([RFC8949], clause 9.4), used to interact with Points via a RESTful method, SHALL use the
338 Internet media type [RFC6838] application/cbor ([RFC8949], clause 9.4). The application/link format is
339 used to list resources such as Points, and octet/stream is used for file transfer.

340 KNX IoT resources MAY also support the JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) format [RFC8259].

341 The examples given in this document are shown in JSON or CBOR diagnostic notation for human
342 readability ([RFC8949] clause 8).

343 In the absence of the CoAP Accept and Content-Format options in a CoAP request or a successful CoAP
344 response, devices SHALL assume the default format specified for the corresponding device resource for
345 each of those options.

346 This document uses the following CBOR notation (for major type 7, the minor types used in this
347 document are a subset only of the specified minor types [RFC8949], clause 3.3):

348

Table 2 – Used notations

| short notation | CBOR type | major type | minor type | Notes |
|------------------|------------------------|------------|------------|---|
| unsigned | unsigned integer | 0 | | The length depends on the value. |
| negative | negative integer | 1 | | The length depends on the value. |
| byte string | byte string | 2 | | The length is dynamic. |
| text | text string | 3 | | The length is dynamic. |
| [] | Array | 4 | | The length is dynamic, as needed by the Point, i.e., a B8 with only 2 bits used will be encoded as an array of bools with length 2. In case we have a homogeneous array of a specific type, we indicate this by adding the <type>*. |
| {} | Map | 5 | | The length is dynamic. |
| <tag>(CBOR type) | Tagging | 6 | | <tag> is a number. |
| <1>(unsigned) | date/time | 0 | 1 | Numerical representation of seconds relative to 1970-01-01T00:00Z in UTC time. |
| bool | false/true | 7 | 20 / 21 | |
| float | single precision float | 7 | 26 | IEEE754 32-bit float. |

349 2.3 System Design

350 2.3.1 Events and Group Communication

351 KNX group communication uses a message-oriented communication pattern for point-to-multipoint
 352 communication where a producer sends a message to notify consumers of a change in the domain. An
 353 event is a message that informs various listeners about something that has happened. A key element of an
 354 event is that the producer potentially does not care much about the response. Often it does not expect any
 355 answer at all, or if there is a response that the producer does care about, it is indirect.

356 There are two concepts for distributing events in a message-oriented system: Message Broker-based
 357 Publish–Subscribe (pub/sub) and brokerless transport layer multicast (or unicast) messaging pattern.
 358 These concepts are described in the following clauses.

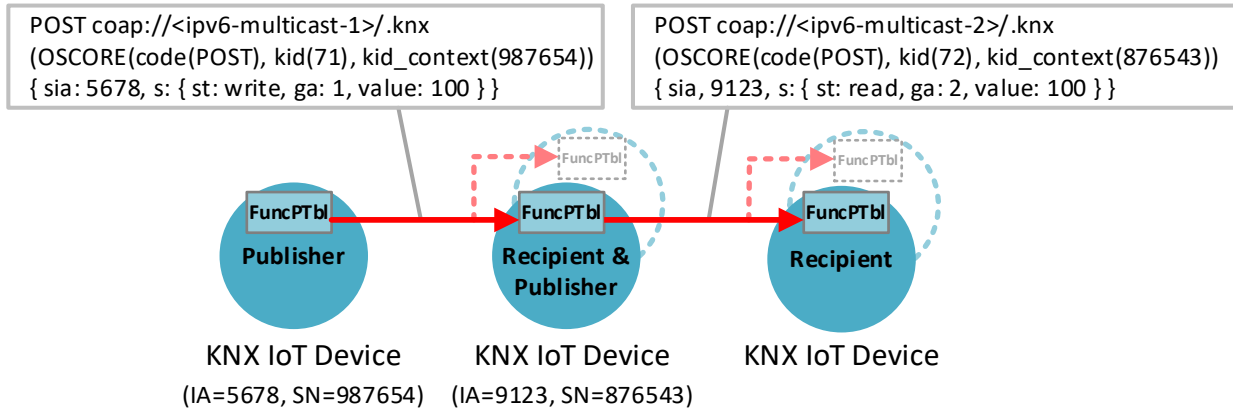
359 2.3.2 Brokerless System

360 The KNX IoT point-to-multipoint communication relies on the IP network infrastructure to deliver
 361 messages to one or more Recipients. IP network devices – like network routers, switches, or bridges – are
 362 used for this purpose. A transport layer multicast messaging pattern is much more efficient than sending
 363 multiple point-to-point transport layer unicast messages. Multicast allows near-simultaneous message
 364 delivery and, thereby, near-simultaneous modification of actuators on all devices in a group, providing
 365 users with a perceived effect of synchronism or simultaneity (lights ON). Multicast is only possible on
 366 top of UDP in IP networks while using a sequence number supports recognizing duplication of messages.
 367 However, IP multicasting is unreliable (unconfirmed transmission) and requires proper configuration of
 368 suitable network equipment like (managed) switches and routers. Routers need knowledge about listeners
 369 in their subsystem for efficient message filtering. Multiple transport layer unicast MAY be used instead of
 370 multicast for communication where simultaneity is of lower importance and/or reliability is of higher
 371 priority.

372 The advantages of a point-to-multipoint system include the following:

- 373 • Near-simultaneous message delivery to multiple Recipients with UDP protocol using multicast
- 374 addressing.
- 375 • Only standard network infrastructure is needed.
- 376 • Messages are delivered directly without software intermediaries and, therefore, have less latency
- 377 and overhead.

378 The Group Notification Message Keys used in the below figure are defined in clause 2.5.9.



379

380

Figure 5 - Brokerless system ¹⁾

381 Figure 5 shows a typical brokerless communication scenario with two different group connections, where
 382 a sender (Publisher) uses multicast addressing to reach one or multiple Recipients. The device shown in
 383 the middle acts as Recipient for the 1st group and as the sender (Publisher) for another 2nd group.

384 The multicast IPv6 address format for point-to-multipoint communication is defined in clause 2.6.5,
 385 "Multicast Group IP Addresses".

386 The unicast IPv6 address format for point-to-point communication is defined in clause 2.6.2, "Device IP
 387 Address".

388 Application-level security, based on OSCORE (see clause 3.6, "OSCORE Application Layer Security"),
 389 ensures message confidentiality and integrity for end-to-end security between Publisher and Recipient.

390 2.3.3 Message Broker-based System

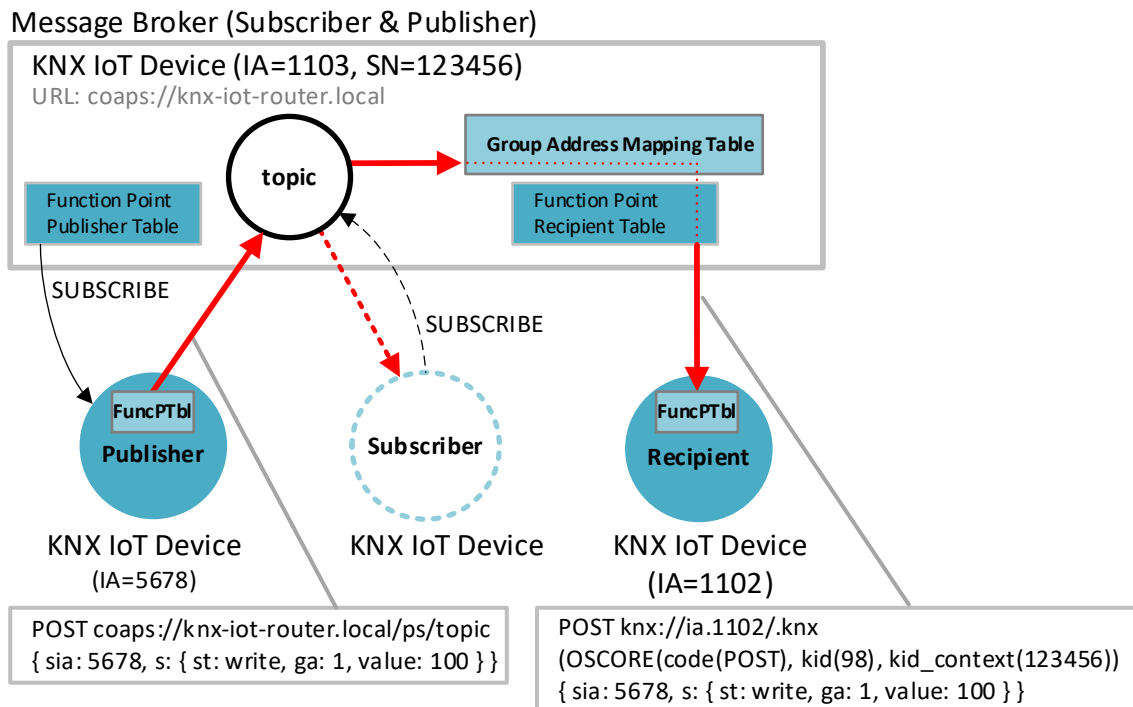
391 Point-to-point messaging with a fixed (configured) setup or Broker-based Publish–Subscribe (pub/sub)
 392 setup is a messaging pattern for facilitating communication in loosely coupled distributed systems. It has
 393 gained increasing popularity in the context of Internet of Things (IoT) applications.

394 With a fixed point-to-point configuration, the serving device sends the message directly to the Recipient
 395 using unicast transport.

396 In most pub/sub systems, a reliable transport layer unicast communication is used. Hence, these systems
 397 rely on unicast application layer messaging (i.e., point-to-point connections from a central broker to each
 398 Subscriber) to disseminate messages. This option assumes a Message Broker in the middle. All the
 399 communication is passed through the Message Broker, and the Message Broker also routes the group
 400 notification to all subscribed applications based on a mapping table.

401 The advantages of this model include the following:

- 402 • Publisher and Subscriber do not have to be directly addressable. They can be anywhere if they
- 403 have access to the Message Broker.
- 404 • Publisher and Subscriber can use different messaging protocols to communicate with the
- 405 Message Broker (e.g., KNX Classic, WebSocket, HTTP, or CoAP).
- 406 • Reliable Group Notifications (acknowledged unicast messages) can be handled to a large list of
- 407 Subscribers, multiple networks, or even chained Message Brokers or scalable Message Brokers.



408 [OBJ]

409

Figure 6 – Broker-based System ¹⁾

410 Figure 6 shows a typical communication scenario with a Message Broker, a (D)TLS Publisher, and an
 411 OSCORE Recipient. Note that the "kid" in the OSCORE message always contains the OSCORE input
 412 material identifier (osc-id) from the corresponding access token, and the "kid_context" contains the
 413 configured context in the OSCORE access token from the device that sends the message. It requires a
 414 Message Broker using technologies like AMQP, MQTT, etc., to bridge between different transport layers
 415 and protocols. In this example, the Message Broker relays messages from (D)TLS Publishers to
 416 Recipients (or Subscribers). A Message Broker can also queue and send the same message to multiple
 417 Recipients. Note that the Message Broker functionality and the protocol proxy (e.g., from CoAP to
 418 MQTT) are outside the scope of this specification. In the context of KNX IoT, the Message Broker is just
 419 a CoAP server and an intermediate that delivers messages to KNX IoT Recipients. Hence, the Message
 420 Broker is a standard KNX IoT device, and KNX IoT defines how to connect to a Message Broker in a
 421 reliable and secure manner.

422 The unicast IPv6 address format is defined in clause 2.6.2, "Device IP Address".

423 Message confidentiality and integrity with the Message Broker can be ensured at two levels.

- 424 1. Application-level security as end-to-end security between Publisher and Recipient based on
 425 OSCORE, see clause 3.6 "OSCORE Application Layer Security" and/or
- 426 2. Transport security between Publishers/Subscribers and the Broker with (D)TLS.

427 The application-level security requires all Publishers, Subscribers, and Recipients to have pre-shared
 428 credentials that grant them access to the necessary group. The configuration of credentials and access
 429 scopes is described in clause 3.5, "Device Access Control".

430 **2.3.4 Device Linking**

431 **2.3.4.1 Introduction**

432 KNX IoT devices send and receive group messages on configured unicast or multicast IP addresses
 433 (messaging endpoint). A MaC (Management Client) configures the KNX system communication
 434 interworking. For this purpose, the MaC configures the KNX Function Point Tables of all KNX devices
 435 in an installation. A KNX IoT device SHALL support Group Communication via

- 436 • Transport layer unicast and multicast (see clause 2.3.2, "Brokerless System"),
- 437 • Publish-Subscribe (see clause 2.3.3, "Message Broker-based System")

438 **2.3.4.2 Function Point Tables**

439 The Function Point Tables of a device are *Group Address* mapping tables. The Function Point Tables
 440 have references from *Group Addresses* ("ga") of a KNX IoT device to a protocol-specific (e.g., CoAP)
 441 destination address for sending or source address for receiving messages (unicast or multicast URL).

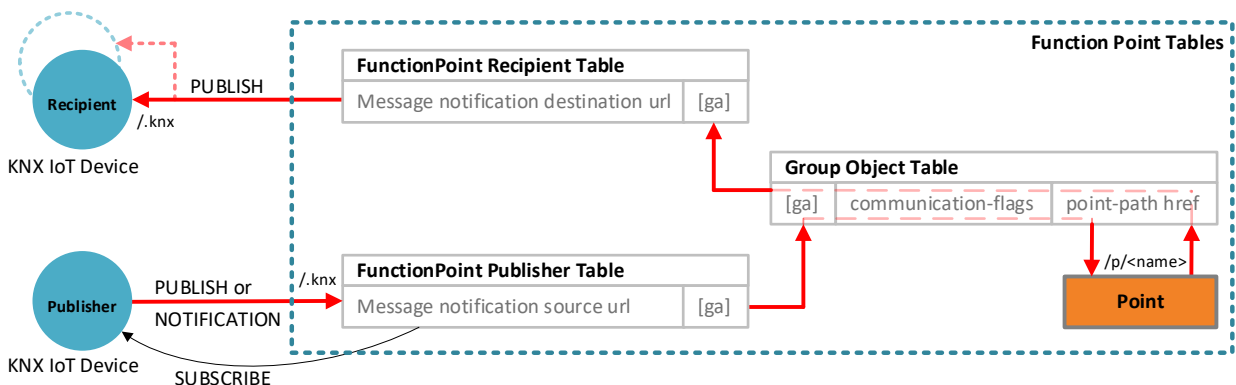
442 The MaC configures Function Point Tables on all KNX IoT Point Devices in both a brokerless and a
 443 broker-based system. The Function Point Tables consist of the following tables:

- 444 • Point mapping configuration: The Group Object Table maps *Group Addresses* to a Point to read a
 445 value, store a value, or further processing of incoming values (see clause 2.5.7.3, "Group Object
 446 Table Resource (fp/g)").
- 447 • Outgoing group event configuration: The Function Point Recipient Table (destination
 448 unicast/multicast address) defines to which devices or with which multicast address group events
 449 are sent (see clause 2.5.7.4, "Function Point Recipient Table Resource (fp/r)").
- 450 • Incoming group event configuration: The Function Point Publisher Table (unicast subscription or
 451 multicast listening address) contains configurations from which devices group events need to be
 452 received (subscription address) or from which multicast address group events are received (see
 453 clause 2.5.7.5, "Function Point Publisher Table Resource (fp/p)").

454 The Group Object Table of a device contains all *Group Object* Points ("href": {point-path}) that can be
 455 activated; the *Group Object* Points are defined by the manufacturer.

456 The KNX IoT *Group Address* is used for KNX S-Mode communication. The *Group Address* is an
 457 unstructured ID ("ga"). The MaC assigns the "ga" with predefined *Group Objects* (Group Object Table)
 458 and writes the configuration to the KNX IoT device (see clause 2.4, "Device Bootstrapping and
 459 Configuration"). In addition, the *Group Address* is also used to discover configured S-Mode *Group*
 460 *Objects* (see clause 2.6.1, "Discovery").

461 The following figure illustrates the general linkage concept between *Group Objects*, Points, and *Group*
 462 *Addresses* but does not prescribe how to implement the table structures.



463 **Figure 7 – Function Point Tables**

465 2.4 Device Bootstrapping and Configuration

466 2.4.1 Introduction

467 Device Bootstrapping is the process of joining a device to an installation and configuring an application.
468 The application configuration of a KNX IoT Point API device aligns with the existing MaC (ETS)
469 workflows and contains the following steps.

470 **STEP 0** - Project creation in MaC.

471 This is as it is done in KNX Classic. This can be done before, in parallel, or after step 1. This may include
472 at this place as well offline configuration, i.e., setting parameters and creating links between the devices
473 for installation parts engineered entirely offline.

474 **STEP 1** - Enter KNX IoT Point API device *KNX Serial Number* in MaC, e.g., by QR code scan.

475 This step brings the serial number to MaC, needed for step 2, and, e.g., an authentication code required
476 for step 3.

477 **STEP 2** - Device Discovery.

478 Discovery of a KNX IoT Point API device follows the method described in 2.6.1.2, "Device Discovery
479 with DNS-SD".

480 NOTE 1 With this version of the KNX IoT Point API specification, it is assumed that a device is reachable
481 already on the IP network at this step, e.g., a wireless (Thread or Wi-Fi) KNX IoT device is already
482 onboarded into the IP network and thus discoverable.

483 **STEP 3** - Device Assignment, i.e., matching the discovered devices with the instances foreseen in the
484 MaC project.

485 This step includes the security setup described under clause 3.2, "Device Identity Enrollment", and 3.5,
486 "Device Access Control".

487 Device Individualization, i.e., assigning a *KNX Individual Address*, is the same as in KNX Classic. This is
488 either by using the *Programming Mode* Method or the *KNX Serial Number* Method in case the *KNX*
489 *Serial Number* is already known to MaC, e.g., by QR code scan.

490 Device Individualization is described in more detail in clause 2.4.2, "Device Individualization
491 Procedure".

492 **STEP 4** - Offline configuration.

493 This step configures parameters and creates links between the devices (Function Point Table). At this
494 place, this may also include configuration of a before online discovered and uploaded installation or part
495 of an installation.

496 **STEP 5** - Download device configuration (Application Download with MaC).

497 With this step, MaC configures the credentials at application level, pre-shared keys. This is, once
498 downloaded, the devices can trust each other.

499 Device configuration is described in more detail in clause 2.4.3, "Device Configuration Procedure".

500 The above numbering does not imply a fixed order for executing these steps, and the order may differ as
501 far as possible and meaningful. Some may even be repeated several times during setup/commissioning of
502 an installation, as it is done in KNX Classic.

503 NOTE 2 This version of the KNX IoT Point API specification does not consider how to join, replace or delete a
504 device from the network and how to avoid the replaced/removed device can still communicate.

505 2.4.2 Device Individualization Procedure

506 Every device in a KNX installation SHALL have a unique, unambiguous *KNX Individual Address*, and
507 this clause defines how a MaC configures the KNX IoT device's *KNX Individual Address*.

508 The *KNX Individual Address* configuration workflow is like the existing procedure in KNX Classic. The
509 device can either be identified by its *KNX Serial Number* or by activating the *KNX Programming Mode*
510 locally on the device, for example, by pressing a button. The MaC can choose one of the following
511 discovery options:

- 512 • DNS-SD: see clause 2.6.1.2 "Device Discovery with DNS-SD" with `_knx` service type.
- 513 • `"/.well-known/core"`: see clause 2.6.1.3 "Resource Discovery with CoAP".
- 514 - with *KNX Serial Number*, see clause 2.6.1.3.6.1 "Endpoint Name `"ep"`".
- 515 - with *Programming Mode*, see clause 2.6.1.3.6.2 "Programming Mode `"if.pm"`".

516 Before writing the *KNX Individual Address* to the discovered device, a MaC SHALL check that no other
517 device has the same *KNX Individual Address*. The MaC has the following options to check *KNX*
518 *Individual Addresses*:

- 519 • DNS-SD: see clause 2.6.1.2 "Device Discovery with DNS-SD" with `_ia` subtype.
- 520 • `"/.well-known/core"`: see clause 2.6.1.3 "Resource Discovery with CoAP" or the example below.

Verify whether the *KNX Individual Address* is already occupied on the network.

REQ:

```
GET coap://[FF03::FD]/.well-known/core?ep=knx://ia.33a3.20a
```

RES:

```
2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))
```

Payload:

```
<>;ep="knx://sn.1caffe1234 knx://ia.33a3.20a"
```

521

522 If the MaC receives a response to a multicast request, it SHALL conclude that the *KNX Individual*
523 *Address* is occupied. If no response is received after a timeout, then the *KNX Individual Address* is not
524 occupied, and subsequently, the MaC can configure the *KNX Individual Address*. For this configuration
525 request, the MaC uses the sender IP address out of the IP response to the before-discovery request as the
526 destination device IP unicast address.

527 The procedure SHALL deactivate the *Programming Mode* by restarting the device (`"/.well-known/knx"`).

528 At this point, the MaC knows the IP address of the uncommissioned KNX IoT device. However, the MaC
529 MAY configure the security credentials first before it configures the *KNX Individual Address* (see clause
530 3.6.2)

531 In the last step, the MaC configures the device's *KNX Individual Address* (see clause 2.5.5.5). A KNX
532 IoT device SHALL accept this configuration request and set its *KNX Individual Address* accordingly.

Write device *KNX Individual Address*.

REQ:

```
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx/ia  
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(osc-id)))
```

Payload:

```
{ 12: <KNX Individual Address>, 25: <fid>, 26: <iid> }
```

533

534 2.4.3 Device Configuration Procedure

535 2.4.3.1 General

536 After the device individualization procedure, the MaC writes the device's new Function Point
537 configuration (fp/g, fp/r, fp/p) and application configuration parameters (p) to the device. A Device Load
538 State Machine controls these resources (see clause 2.5.8, "Application Program Object Resource (ap)").

539 2.4.3.2 Full download

540 Table 3 specifies the configuration procedure for a full download. An example is given in clause 6.2.1,
541 "Full Download Example".

542

Table 3 – Full download

| Step | Procedure | Description |
|------|--|--|
| 1 | Check MaC DB Entry compatibility with KNX IoT device by comparing "dev/mid" and "dev/hwt". | See clause 2.5.6, "Device Object Resource (dev)". Continue with the next steps only if the compatibility check is successful. |
| 2 | Set State Machine to "unload". | See clause 2.5.8, "Application Program Object Resource (ap)". If the intermediate state "unloading" is supported by the KNX IoT device (Management Server), it may answer with state "unloading". The MaC SHALL NOT continue before the KNX IoT device has reached the state "unloaded". |
| 3 | Set State Machine to "loading". | See clause 2.5.8, "Application Program Object Resource (ap)". |
| 4 | Write parameter configuration. | See clause 2.5.11, "Parameter and Diagnostic Property Resource (p)". |
| 5 | Write Group Object Table. | See clause 2.5.7.3, "Group Object Table Resource (fp/g)". |
| 6 | Write Function Point Publisher Table. | See clause 2.5.7.5, "Function Point Publisher Table Resource (fp/p)". |
| 7 | Write Function Point Recipient Table. | See clause 2.5.7.4, "Function Point Recipient Table Resource (fp/r)". |
| 8 | Write Application Program Version "ap/pv". | See clause 2.5.8, "Application Program Object Resource (ap)". |
| 9 | Set State Machine to "loaded". | See clause 2.5.8, "Application Program Object Resource (ap)". If the intermediate state "loadcompleting" is supported by the KNX IoT device, then it MAY answer with the state "loadcompleting". The MaC SHALL NOT continue before the KNX IoT device has reached the state "loadcomplete". |
| 10 | Read the device configuration fingerprint of the written resources. | See clause 2.5.5.4, "Device Configuration Fingerprint (.well-known/knx/f)". The retrieved checksum MAY be stored by the MaC for a future decision about a partial/differential download. |
| 11 | Restart device (optional). | See clause 2.5.5.3.3, "(Basic) Restart Command". |

543 **2.4.3.3 Partial/Differential download**

544 Table 4 specifies the configuration procedure for a partial/differential download. The partial/differential
 545 download is used if the device is in a known state. In this case, the MaC can write only the differences to
 546 the device. An example is given in clause 6.2.2, "Partial Download Example".

547

Table 4 – Partial/differential download

| Step | Procedure | Description |
|------|--|---|
| 1 | Check MaC DB Entry compatibility with KNX IoT device by comparing "dev/mid" and "dev/hwt". | See clause 2.5.6, "Device Object Resource (dev)". Continue with the next steps only if the compatibility check is successful. |
| 2 | Check if the KNX IoT device is in a known state. | See clause 2.5.5.4 "Device Configuration Fingerprint (.well-known/knx/f)". If the device configuration fingerprint value is known by the MaC, then the MaC MAY continue with a differential download. Else, the MaC SHALL fall back to the full download procedure acc. Clause 2.4.3.2, "Full download", and continue there with Step 2. |
| 3 | Set State Machine to "loading". | See clause 2.5.8, "Application Program Object Resource (ap)". |
| 4 | Write parameter configuration (conditional: only if changes there). | See clause 2.5.11, "Parameter and Diagnostic Property Resource (p)". The MaC MAY write only changed parameters (identified by href). |
| 5 | Write Group Object Table (conditional: only if changes there). | See clause 2.5.7.3 "Group Object Table Resource (fp/g)". The MaC MAY write only changed group objects (identified by "id"). |
| 6 | Write Function Point Publisher Table (conditional: only if changes there). | See clause 2.5.7.5, "Function Point Publisher Table Resource (fp/p)". The MaC MAY write only changed table entries (identified by "id"). Entries with a new "id" will create a new entry. |
| 7 | Write Function Point Recipient Table (conditional: only if changes there). | See clause 2.5.7.4, "Function Point Recipient Table Resource (fp/r)". The MaC MAY write only changed table entries (identified by "id"). Entries with a new "id" will create a new entry. |
| 8 | Write Application Program Version "ap/pv" | See clause 2.5.8, "Application Program Object Resource (ap)". |
| 9 | Set State Machine to "loaded". | See clause 2.5.8, "Application Program Object Resource (ap)". If the intermediate state "loadcompleting" is supported by the KNX IoT device, then it may answer with the state "loadcompleting". The MaC SHALL NOT continue before the KNX IoT device has reached the state "loadcomplete". |
| 10 | Read the checksum of the written resources. | See clause 2.5.5.4, "Device Configuration Fingerprint (.well-known/knx/f)". The retrieved checksum MAY be stored by the MaC for a future decision about a partial/differential download. |
| 11 | Restart device (optional). | See clause 2.5.5.3.3, "(Basic) Restart Command". |

548 2.5 Resource Model

549 2.5.1 Introduction

550 Resources are the basis for representing the state and functionality or, rather, a KNX application.
551 Resources provide access to standard application services like device and resource discovery, device-
552 specific properties, and function calls. The resource model provides means for presenting, describing, and
553 addressing data and metadata. Data is accessible by RESTful methods for creating, reading, setting, and
554 deleting data. This clause gives rules for device interactions that need to be exposed for configuration and
555 discovery and provides guidelines for using predefined attributes.

556 2.5.2 Resources (Points)

557 2.5.2.1 Definition

558 Points are KNX application-specific API resources representing the KNX application domain model.
559 With a URI, a resource is uniquely defined, and a URL includes the schema to access the resource. Using
560 KNX-specific nomenclature for resource names helps developers understand the functionality and basic
561 semantics of resources, and it also reduces the need for further documentation of the API items. This
562 clause defines mandatory and optional resource paths and names.

563 2.5.2.2 Base Path

564 A KNX IoT device MAY have a base path to which the Point API resource paths are appended. However,
565 it is RECOMMENDED to avoid a base path if possible.

566 2.5.2.3 Resource Names

567 To simplify the encoding of resource IDs in URLs, their representations SHALL only consist of ASCII
568 strings of letters, numbers, underscore, minus, colon, and period.

569 URLs are often treated as case sensitive; therefore, lowercase separated words with hyphens "-"
570 SHOULD be used.

571 This specification does not define resource names for *Functional Blocks* (f) or properties (p). However, it
572 is RECOMMENDED to reuse either IDs or names from the KNX Application Descriptions (KNX
573 standard Volume 7):

- 574 • Functional Block path: "{base-path}/f/{fb-id-instance}"
- 575 • Property path: "{base-path}/p/{fb-id-instance}/{property-id}"

576 2.5.2.4 Resource Path

577 The resource path definitions allow access to items of a KNX IoT device, such as discovery, device,
578 authorization, *Functional Blocks*, and Property items, based on entities as specified in [03] "KNX
579 Information Model".

580 To keep the API and authorization simple, a resource path SHOULD contain only one collection or item
581 resource with an {id} and MAY a sub-resource path for collections:

- 582 • collection path: "/collection"
- 583 • item path: "/items/{id}"
- 584 • collection path of a particular item: "/items/{id}/collection"

585 It is vital to keep maintenance and service evolution manageable. Therefore, the resources follow
586 "functional segmentation" and "separation of concern" design principles and do not mix different
587 functionalities in the same API resource. This keeps maintenance and service evolution manageable.

588 The length of a KNX IoT device resource path SHALL not exceed the maximum of 30 bytes.

589 A KNX IoT device server has the following MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL ("O") resource path
590 definitions with their corresponding access methods.

591 **Table 5 – Resource path definitions**

| Category | Method | Resource Path | Support | Reference |
|-----------------------|--------|------------------------------------|---------|----------------|
| Discovery | GET | /.well-known/core | M | clause 2.5.4 |
| Device | POST | /.well-known/knx | M | clause 2.5.5 |
| | POST | /.well-known/knx/ia | M | clause 2.5.5.5 |
| | GET | /.well-known/knx/f | M | 2.5.5.4 |
| | GET | {base-path}/dev | M | clause 2.5.6 |
| | GET | {base-path}/dev/{property-path} | M | |
| | PUT | {base-path}/dev/{property-path} | M/O | |
| | GET | {base-path}/swu | M | clause 4.2 |
| | GET | {base-path}/swu/{property-path} | M | |
| | PUT | {base-path}/swu/{property-path} | M/O | |
| Application Program | GET | {base-path}/ap | M | clause 2.5.8 |
| | GET | {base-path}/ap/{property-path} | M | |
| | PUT | {base-path}/ap/{property-path} | M/O | |
| Security | POST | /.well-known/knx/spake | M | clause 3.6.3.3 |
| | PUT | /.well-known/knx/spake | M | clause 3.6.3.5 |
| | GET | /.well-known/knx/idevid | O | clause 3.3.1 |
| | GET | /.well-known/knx/ldevid | O | clause 3.3.2 |
| | GET | {base-path}/auth | M | clause 3.2.5 |
| | POST | {base-path}/auth/crts | O | clause 3.5.2 |
| | GET | {base-path}/auth/crts | O | |
| | DELETE | {base-path}/auth/crts/{cert-id} | O | |
| | POST | {base-path}/auth/at | M | clause 3.5.4 |
| | GET | {base-path}/auth/at | M | |
| | GET | {base-path}/auth/at/{token-id} | M | |
| | DELETE | {base-path}/auth/at/{token-id} | M | |
| | GET | {base-path}/auth/o/{property-path} | M | clause 3.6.4 |
| Messaging | POST | /.knx | M | clause 2.5.9 |
| | GET | /.knx | M | |
| Function Point Tables | POST | {base-path}/fp/g | M | clause 2.5.7 |
| | GET | {base-path}/fp/g | M | |
| | GET | {base-path}/fp/g/{group-object-id} | M | |
| | DELETE | {base-path}/fp/g/{group-object-id} | M | |
| | POST | {base-path}/fp/r | M | |
| | GET | {base-path}/fp/r | M | |
| | GET | {base-path}/fp/r/{recipient-id} | M | |
| | DELETE | {base-path}/fp/r/{recipient-id} | M | |
| | POST | {base-path}/fp/p | O | |

| Category | Method | Resource Path | Support | Reference |
|-------------------|--------|-------------------------------------|---------|----------------|
| | GET | / {base-path} /fp/p | O | |
| | GET | / {base-path} /fp/p/ {publisher-id} | O | |
| | DELETE | / {base-path} /fp/p/ {publisher-id} | O | |
| Actions | POST | / {base-path} /a/lsm | M | clause 2.5.8 |
| | GET | / {base-path} /a/lsm | M | |
| | POST | / {base-path} /a/swu | O | clause 4.2 |
| | POST | / {base-path} /a/sen | O | clause 3.2.4.2 |
| Functional blocks | GET | / {base-path} /f/ {fb-id-instance} | M | clause 2.5.10 |
| Properties | POST | / {base-path} /p | M | clause 2.5.11 |
| | GET | / {base-path} /p | M | |
| | GET | / {base-path} /p/ {property-path} | M | |
| | PUT | / {base-path} /p/ {property-path} | M | |
| Subscriptions | DELETE | / {base-path} /sub | M | clause 2.5.12 |

592

593 2.5.3 Interface Types (if)

594 2.5.3.1 Introduction and overview

595 This clause specifies a set of default interface types and defines how manufacturers can add additional
596 manufacturer-specific interface types.

597 The interface describes a generic context or view to interact with a resource or a set of resources. The
598 interface description "if" attribute is an opaque string that provides a name indicating a specific interface
599 definition used to interact with the KNX IoT device. The usage of the interface description "if" attribute is
600 described in 3.5.3 "Access Scope".

601 The interface types are derived from the KNX Device Model (see clause 1.3), and MAY contains a set of
602 additional mandatory or optional metadata.

603 Table 6 defines KNX IoT interfaces and which CoAP Methods are allowed for a particular interface on a
604 KNX IoT device:

605

Table 6 – Interface definitions and methods

| Type | Interface | Method | Description |
|----------------|-----------|---------------------------|---|
| Link List | if.ll | GET, (OBSERVE) | Read a linked list and, in combination with if.o, subscribe to all Points of the list. |
| Parameter | if.p | GET, PUT, (OBSERVE) | Adjust parameter Point (see [03] "KNX Information Model"). |
| Diagnostic | if.d | GET, (OBSERVE) | Read diagnostic Point (see [03] "KNX Information Model"). |
| Configuration | if.c | GET, PUT, POST, DELETE | Configuration and programming of a device. |
| Logical Input | if.i | PUT, POST | Write and command runtime input Group Object Point (see [03] "KNX Information Model" and clause 1.3). |
| Logical Output | if.o | GET, POST, OBSERVE | Read and subscribe runtime output Group Object Point (see [03] "KNX Information Model" and clause 1.3). |

| Type | Interface | Method | Description |
|---------------------|-------------|----------------------------------|---|
| Group Communication | if.g.s | POST, GET (OBSERVE) | Group communication (S-Mode) runtime interworking (input and output) address. |
| Batch | if.b | GET, PUT, POST | Read or write a collection (e.g., Point list). |
| Actuator | if.a | GET, PUT, POST | Hardwired actuator (see [03] "KNX Information Model" and clause 1.3). |
| Sensor | if.s | GET, PUT | Hardwired sensor (see [03] "KNX Information Model" and clause 1.3). |
| Security | if.sec | GET, PUT, POST, DELETE | Configuration (read and write) of security, incl. authorization-related data (see clause 3 "Security"). |
| Software Update | if.swu | GET, PUT, POST, DELETE | Software update (push and pull) related data (see clause 4). |
| Programming Mode | if.pm | GET | Data that can be read in Programming Mode. |
| Manufacturer | if.m.{name} | Manufacturer-specific definition | Manufacturer-specific interface types. |

606

607 2.5.3.2 Link List Interface Type (if.ll)

608 The Link List interface gradually reveals resources on a KNX IoT device. It is used to retrieve (GET) a
 609 list of resources on a KNX IoT device. The GET request SHOULD contain an Accept option with the
 610 application/link-format content format. The request returns a list of URI references with absolute paths to
 611 the resources as defined in CoRE Link Format [RFC6690]. This interface is typically used with a parent
 612 resource to enumerate sub-resources but MAY be used to reference any resource on an origin server.

CoAP client requests a link list (datapoint list) from a Room Temperature Sensor (Functional Block 321).

REQ:

```
GET coap://{ip unicast}/f/rts
```

RES:

```
CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))
```

Payload:

```
</p/rts/temproom>;rt=":dpa.321.51";ct=50,  
</p/rts/tempcorrvalue>;rt=":dpa.321.111";ct=50,  
</p/rts/tempalarmlimitupper>;rt=":dpa.321.113";ct=50
```

613

614 2.5.3.3 Parameter and Diagnostic Interface Type (if.p, if.d)

615 Parameter and diagnostic Properties (see clause 1.3) are the basic interfaces of a Point API and define
 616 whether a client can only read or read and update values and metadata, such as getting the current sensor
 617 value or updating a setpoint. The following MANDATORY and OPTIONAL metadata members from
 618 clause 2.5.11.3 are assigned to the "if.p" (parameter) and "if.d" (diagnostic) interface:

- 619 • id
- 620 • rt
- 621 • if
- 622 • unit
- 623 • min
- 624 • max

625 A Point MAY implement a Parameter ("if.p") and Diagnostic Property ("if.d") in combination with a
626 communication interworking interface type ("if.i", "if.o"). In such cases, it is RECOMMENDED to
627 combine only "if.i" with "if.p" (inputs) or "if.o" with "if.d" (outputs).

628 **2.5.3.4 Configuration Interface Type (if.c)**

629 The Configuration interface is used to configure a basic functionality, Function Point Tables, or for
630 programming a KNX IoT device.

631 **2.5.3.5 Input Interface Type (if.i)**

632 A communication interworking logical input Point (see clause 1.3) receives events from Publishers. An
633 input interface Point receives either status events (e.g., light switch ON/OFFF) or periodic updates from
634 Publishers (if.o interface). A Point with an interface type "if.i" SHALL NOT be of interface type "if.o" at
635 once.

636 The Recipient device MAY have a default behavior if no update is received within a given period
637 (e.g., Max-Age timeout). For example, a controller gets a periodic synchronization from an output
638 temperature sensor and uses a default value if the sensor value is not present (e.g., broken or not
639 configured). It is RECOMMENDED to use the "hbt" metadata member for timeout configurations in
640 combination with the following timeout calculation: $\text{timeout} = (\text{"hbt"} * 2) + 1$.

641 Example: $\text{timeout} = (15\text{min} * 2) + 1 = 31\text{min}$

642 **2.5.3.6 Output Interface Type (if.o)**

643 A communication interworking logical output Point (see clause 1.3) sends status events (e.g., light switch
644 ON/OFFF) or periodic updates (e.g., temperature sensor) from a Publisher to a Receiver ("if.i" interface).
645 A Point with an interface type "if.o" SHALL NOT be of interface type "if.i" at once.

646 An output interface Point either supports subscriptions (e.g., CoAP Observe) or S-Mode event
647 notifications. Examples are operating modes, setpoints, status updates, sensor values, etc. Those values,
648 such as an outside temperature value, MAY have additional metadata used to synchronize values
649 throughout the system. The following metadata members from clause 2.5.11.3, "Metadata Query
650 Parameter "m", MAY be assigned to the "if.o" interface:

- 651 • mrt
- 652 • cov
- 653 • hbt

654 **2.5.3.7 Group Object Interface (if.g.s)**

655 Points with a Groups Object interface support S-Mode event notifications, and a MaC can link *Group*
656 *Addresses* to this object. The following metadata members from clause 2.5.11.3, "Metadata Query
657 Parameter "m", are assigned to the "if.g.s" interface:

- 658 • g

659 2.5.3.8 Batch Interface Type (if.b)

660 The Batch interface ("if.b") manipulates a collection of sub-resources or an array of values with a single
 661 request. A resource with an "if.b" interface SHALL support pagination as defined in clause 2.6.8,
 662 "Pagination". Single items can be accessed with pagination query parameters starting with pn=0 if no
 663 query parameter is present.

664 If a resource contains an array of datapoint values, then the resource SHALL be of type Batch interface
 665 ("if.b").

666 Datapoint values SHALL be modeled as key/value pairs in the GET response (see rules in 2.5.11.1), but
 667 only if the client requests more than one item (ps > 1). The default list size SHALL be ps=1 if the query
 668 parameter is absent.

669 The KNX IoT device GET response SHALL list items in the same order as they were written (first array
 670 item = "po=0"). A KNX IoT device SHALL support write (PUT) of a single value, for example, on "if.p"
 671 interfaces. However, updating a list of values on the same resource is OPTIONAL.

The CoAP client reads an array of Ipv6 configurations with a single request.

REQ:

```
GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/dev/ipv6?pn=0&ps=3
```

RES:

```
CONTENT (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))
```

Payload:

```
[
  { 1: "20010db8000300006cd98ad28e881a47" }, //value
  { 1: "fe800000000000006cd98ad28e881a47" }, //value
  { 1: "fd0000ff1ce0ba56cd98ad28e881a47" } //value
]
```

672

The client omits pagination parameters and gets only the first list item.

REQ:

```
GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/dev/ipv6
```

RES:

```
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60))
```

Payload:

```
{ 1: 20010db8000300006cd98ad28e881a47 } //value
```

673

674 The interface type of a resource representing a collection of sub-resources SHALL be of type Batch
 675 interface. The Batch interface resource SHALL support the same methods as its sub-resources and can be
 676 used to read (GET), update (PUT), or apply (POST) the values of that sub-resource. The method used on
 677 Batch only applies to sub-resources that support it. For example, sensor interfaces do not support PUT;
 678 thus, a PUT request to a Sensor member of that Batch would be ignored.

679 The next example shows how a MaC configures multiple values of one or many Properties with a single
 680 request.

CoAP client writes a collection of datapoints to a device with a single request to a Room Temperature Sensor (Functional Block 321).**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/p (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

```
[
  { 11: "/p/rts/tempcorrvalue", 1: 0.5 },
  { 11: "/p/rts/tempalarmlimitupper", 1: 27.2 }
]
```

681

682 2.5.3.9 Programming Mode Interface Type (if.pm)

683 A MaC MAY want to find devices in *Programming Mode* during the device bootstrapping and
684 configuration step. Hence, a KNX IoT device SHALL support the *Programming Mode*.

685 With the *Programming Mode*, the destination KNX IoT device can be identified by selecting the device
686 manually. This can be done by pressing a button that brings this device into *Programming Mode*, i.e.,
687 only the device where the button is pressed. The way a KNX IoT device is set to *Programming Mode* is
688 manufacturer specific.

689 2.5.3.10 Manufacturer Specific Interface Type (if.m.{name})

690 The manufacturer interface allows manufacturer-specific interface types on resources, such as
691 manufacturer-specific methods (GET, PUT, etc.). Manufacturer-specific interface types SHALL start
692 either with "urn:" or ".if.m." followed by a manufacturer-specific string {name}.

693 2.5.4 Device Discovery Resource (.well-known/core)

694 For CoAP-based resource discovery purposes, a KNX IoT device SHALL support the /.well-known/core
695 resource [RFC6690], and the device SHALL accept unicast and multicast discovery requests on this
696 resource. More details are described in clause 2.6.1, "Discovery". In the case of multicast discovery
697 queries, a KNX IoT device SHALL follow the rules for response suppression described in clause 2.6.4.3,
698 "Response suppression". In the case of unicast discovery queries, a KNX IoT device SHOULD respond
699 as described in clause 2.6.3.3.2, "Error Responses to Queries".

700 The response SHALL contain all *Functional Block* resources of a KNX IoT device. The response MAY
701 have only *Functional Block* resources to reduce the message size. However, the response SHALL contain
702 all implemented *Functional Blocks* standardized in KNX Application Descriptions (KNX standard
703 Volume 7) and supported content types (ct). In addition, the following resources SHALL be in the
704 response if supported by the device:

- 705 • /{base-path}/dev
- 706 • /{base-path}/auth
- 707 • /{base-path}/swu
- 708 • /.knx

709 The *Functional Block* resources in the response SHALL support the application/link-format. This allows
710 clients to discover Points with subsequent requests (see clause 2.5.10, "Functional Block Resource (f)").

711 The response SHALL contain the namespace identifier "urn:knx" since the device context is unknown to
712 the client at this stage.

CoAP client discovers device Functional Blocks.

REQ:

GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/core

RES:

CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))

Payload:

```
</auth>;rt="urn:knx:fb.auth";ct=40,
</dev>;rt="urn:knx:fb.0";ct=40,
</swu>;rt="urn:knx:fb.swu";ct=40,
</knx>;rt="urn:knx:g.s"ct=60,
</f/rts>;rt="urn:knx:fb.321";ct=40
```

713

714 **2.5.5 Device API Resource (.well-known/knx)**

715 **2.5.5.1 General requirement**

716 A KNX IoT device SHALL support the "/.well-known/knx" resource for KNX-specific device operations,
 717 such as device individualization, security configuration (see clause 3, "Security"), reset to the default
 718 state, or device restart.

719 **2.5.5.2 API Version Resource Object**

720 The "/.well-known/knx" resource also provides the KNX IoT API version information and relationship
 721 information to identify the API entry point for a MaC or any other client. A basic response contains the
 722 data listed in Table 7. MANDATORY ("M") attributes SHALL be present in the message.

723

Table 7 – Data in the basic response

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| "api" | "api" | map | M | The API object contains the most recent supported API version on the KNX IoT device. |
| "version" | "version" | Text string | M | Major and minor version of the KNX IoT Point API (" <major.minor.patch>").</major.minor.patch> |
| "base" | "base" | Text string | M | The /{base-path}/ member value is part of the entire URL of a KNX IoT Point API. The device SHALL reply with "/" if the {base-path} is empty or at the end of the {base-path}. This simplifies concatenation with relative paths. A client SHALL include the resource path base member value when requesting content from a KNX IoT device (see clause 2.5.2.2, "Base Path"). |

724

725 Semantic versioning contains major, minor, and patch information. The version member value SHALL
 726 contain the major, minor, and patch number according to the format major.minor.patch, represented as a
 727 string. The major number starts from the value 1; the minor and patch numbers begin with the value 0.

728 On any compatible change with the current KNX IoT Point API, the major number remains, and the
 729 minor number SHALL be incremented. The base member value SHALL NOT be changed.

730 On any incompatible change with the current KNX IoT Point API, the new major number SHALL be
 731 incremented. The new minor number SHALL be set to 0.

732 The KNX IoT device Point API SHALL have version 1.0.0 if the API complies with this specification
 733 version and implements the MANDATORY resource definitions defined in clause 2.5.2.4 "Resource
 734 Path".

735 Table 8 defines MANDATORY ("M") resources of a KNX IoT device and the corresponding resource
 736 path names that SHALL be used.

737 **Table 8 – Mandatory and option configuration resources**

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|------------------|-----------------|-------------|--------|----------|--|---|
| /.well-known/knx | NA | cbor (json) | GET | M | Res: Content-Format: application/json Payload: { "api": { "version": "1.0.0", "base": "/" } } | Device KNX Point API version and base path. |

738

739 2.5.5.3 Device Command Resource Object

740 2.5.5.3.1 Overview

741 The functionality of the reset resource is derived from the functionality of the Master Reset Service as
 742 defined for KNX Classic devices, see [09].

743 A KNX IoT device SHALL support the reset command (cmd), with supported erase codes 0x2 ("Reset to
 744 default state") and 0x7 ("Reset to default without IA").

745 With erase code 0x2 ("Reset to default state"), all addressing information and security configuration data
 746 SHALL be reset to the default state. With erase code 0x7 ("Reset to default without IA"), all
 747 configuration data SHALL be reset to default state except addressing information (IA, Device IP address,
 748 Installation ID) and security configuration data (credentials) that are needed after the reset to access the
 749 device without the need to discover the device again and/or renew addressing information and security
 750 credentials.

751 Table 9 defines JSON keys and the CBOR mapping for CoAP request and response members of "/.well-
 752 known/knx". MANDATORY ("M") attributes SHALL be present in the message, and OPTIONAL ("O")
 753 MAY are present in the message, but all attributes SHALL be supported on the device.

754

Table 9 – Command members of "/.well-known/knx"

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|----------|----------|-------------|----------|---|
| "value" | 1 | unsigned | M | Erase-code value (see [09], Table 4). |
| "cmd" | 2 | text string | M | Service command. Enum: reset, restart. |

755

756

Table 10 – Response members of "/.well-known/knx"

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|----------|----------|-----------|----------|---|
| "code" | "code" | unsigned | M | Device response error code (see [09], Table 5). |
| "time" | "time" | unsigned | M | Process time (see [09]). |

757

758 2.5.5.3.2 (Master) Reset Command

759 A KNX IoT device provides the functionality to reset it to its default state, which typically corresponds to
 760 the ex-factory state of the device's configurable data. Resetting a device to the default state is a device-
 761 specific operation. A KNX IoT device, therefore, SHALL support the following command to allow a
 762 MaC, or any other client with appropriate rights, to reset the KNX IoT device to its default configuration
 763 state.

764 Table 11 defines MANDATORY ("M") resources of a KNX IoT device and the corresponding resource
 765 path names that SHALL be used.

766

Table 11 – Device Reset Command

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|------------------|-----------------|--------|--------|----------|---|---|
| /.well-known/knx | NA | cbor | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 2: "reset", 1: <erase-code> } Res: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { "code": <error-code>, "time": <process-time> } | The CoAP reset request SHALL be confirmed by the device before the CoAP connection breaks down. |

767

768 To perform a Master Reset, the KNX IoT device SHALL reset its configuration data according to the
 769 following:

- 770 • The Function Point Tables SHALL be cleared. Hence the Master Reset stops runtime
771 interworking (group communication).
- 772 • Depending on the erase code, any network and security parameters SHALL be reset to their ex-
773 factory default state (applicable for erase codes 0x2 and 0x3, but explicitly not for erase code
774 0x7); with erase-code 0x7, all security parameters (auth/at, auth/crts) SHALL be reset, except the
775 parameters under access scope "if.sec".
- 776 • A (Basic) Restart is executed.

777 For the definition of erase codes, see [09] Table 4. From the list of the erase codes defined there, a KNX
 778 IoT device SHALL support erase codes 0x2 and 0x7. It MAY support further erase codes, e.g., 0x3, for
 779 explicitly resetting the network and security parameters.

780 Before executing the reset function, the KNX IoT device SHALL return a response with CoAP response
 781 code "2.04 Changed" and with a payload containing Error Code and Process Time in seconds as defined
 782 for the response to a Master Reset Request for KNX Classic devices, see [09]. The following example
 783 shows how a MaC sets a KNX IoT device to its default configuration state.

(Master) Reset to the default state.

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

{ 2: "reset", 1: <erase-code> }

RES:

2.04 CHANGED (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

{ "code": <error-code>, "time": <process-time> }

784

785 2.5.5.3.3 (Basic) Restart Command

786 A KNX IoT device SHALL support the following command to allow a MaC, or any other client with
 787 appropriate rights, to restart a KNX IoT device.

788 Table 12 defines MANDATORY ("M") resources of a KNX IoT device and the corresponding resource
 789 path names that SHALL be used.

790

Table 12 – Device Restart command

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|------------------|-----------------|--------|----------|--|--|
| /.well-known/knx | NA | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 2: "restart" } | The device SHALL NOT confirm the CoAP restart request, and the restart may result in a breakdown of the CoAP connection. |

791

792 To perform a (Basic) Restart, the KNX IoT device SHALL

- 793
- 794 • switch off Programming Mode
 - 795 • terminate the validity of the responder key of an open PASE session (see 3.6.3)
 - 796 • apply changed configuration parameters at the latest 30 s after completing the restart.

797 It is explicitly not required but optional to restart the network stack or the overall hardware/firmware of
 798 the device. Consequently, a restart may result in a breakdown of the CoAP connection.

799 2.5.5.4 Device Configuration Fingerprint (.well-known/knx/f)

800 A KNX IoT device SHALL provide a resource to read a fingerprint of the device configuration settings
801 (e.g., a checksum). The device configuration fingerprint SHALL include parameters that can be changed
802 of the following resources:

- 803 • /{base-path}/fp/g
- 804 • /{base-path}/fp/r
- 805 • /{base-path}/fp/p
- 806 • /{base-path}/p

807 A MaC MAY use the device configuration fingerprint to decide whether a differential download is
808 possible or not. The calculation of the device configuration fingerprint is manufacturer specific but
809 SHALL reflect distinct device configuration settings. The KNX IoT device SHALL reply with the
810 configuration fingerprint only in "loaded" state.

811 Suppose the KNX IoT device cannot immediately respond since it is busy (e.g., status ≠ loaded); the
812 device SHALL return response code "5.03 Service Unavailable" but uses the Max-Age option to indicate
813 the number of seconds after which to retry.

814 Table 13 defines MANDATORY ("M") resources of a KNX IoT device and the corresponding resource
815 path names that SHALL be used.

816 **Table 13 – Device Configuration Fingerprint resource**

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------|---------|---|---|
| /well-known/knx/f | NA | GET | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: <value> } | Device-specific fingerprint to identify changes in the resources "fp/g", "fp/r", "fp/p", and "p". |

817

818 2.5.5.5 Device Individualization Resource (.well-known/knx/ia)

819 Each KNX IoT device, i.e., a Router or an end device, SHALL have a unique *KNX Individual Address* in
820 a network. The *KNX Individual Address* is a 2-octet value that consists of an 8-bit Subnetwork Address
821 (see "dev/sna") and an 8-bit Device Address (see "dev/da").

| <i>KNX Individual Address</i> | |
|-------------------------------|----------------|
| Octet 0 | Octet 1 |
| Subnetwork Address | Device Address |

822 Example: Subnetwork Address: 0, Device Address: 1 = 0x0001

823 The individualization process is derived from the A_IndividualAddress_Write-service defined for KNX
824 Classic devices (see [11]). However, KNX IoT splits the functionality into a *Programming Mode*
825 discovery (see clauses 2.6.1.2.3 and 2.6.1.3.6.3) and a device address configuration step.

826 The "/well-known/knx/ia" resource SHALL be used by the MaC to modify the *KNX Individual Address*
827 and the installation ID on a KNX IoT device (see clause 2.4.2).

828 The device individualization request SHALL contain the new *KNX Individual Address* and installation
829 ID. Table 14 defines the MANDATORY ("M") resource object members and CBOR keys. If a member is
830 marked as OPTIONAL ("O"), a client can omit the member in the request. However, the server SHALL
831 support the member handling.

832

Table 14 – Device Individualization Resource Object

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|----------|----------|-----------|----------|---|
| "ia" | 12 | unsigned | M | New KNX Individual Address device configuration (2 Byte). |
| "fid" | 25 | unsigned | O | New KNX Fabric ID device for unicast address configuration. |
| "iid" | 26 | unsigned | M | New KNX Installation ID for device multicast configuration. |

833

834 Supposed the KNX IoT device has changed its local *KNX Individual Address* (see "dev/sna", "dev/da",
835 "dev/iid", and "dev/fid" in clause 2.5.6), then the KNX IoT device SHALL return a response with CoAP
836 response code "2.04 Changed". After responding to the client, the KNX IoT device SHALL change the
837 IPv6 address if the KNX Fabric ID has changed (see ULA clause 2.6.2).

838 Table 15 defines MANDATORY ("M") resources of a KNX IoT device and the corresponding resource
839 path names that SHALL be used.

840

Table 15 – Device Individualization Resource

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------|----------|---|--|
| /.well-known/knx/ia | NA | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 12: < <i>KNX Individual Address</i> >, 26: <iid> } | Device individualization for configuring the device <i>KNX Individual Address</i> and installation ID. |

841

842 2.5.6 Device Object Resource (dev)

843 The device object contains general device-specific settings and configurations. The MaC configures some
844 Properties (see clause 2.4.3, "Device Configuration Procedure"), and other Properties are configured in
845 the factory (e.g., *KNX Serial Number*).

846 Table 16 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL ("O") device resources (dev) and the
847 corresponding resource path names that SHALL be used.

Table 16 – Device resources and paths

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|--------------------------------|-------------|--------|----------|---|--|
| dev | :fb.0 | link-format | GET | M | Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: </dev/sn>;rt=":dpa.0.11";ct=60, </dev/fwv>;ct=60, </dev/hwt>;ct=60, </dev/model>;rt=":dpa.0.15";ct=60, </dev/sna>;rt=":dpa.0.57";ct=60, </dev/da>;rt=":dpa.0.58";ct=60, </dev/hname>;ct=60, </dev/ipv6>;ct=60, </dev/fid>;ct=60, </dev/iid>;ct=60, </dev/mport>;ct=60, </dev/pm>;rt=":dpa.0.54";ct=60 | Device <i>Functional Block</i> . |
| dev/sn | :dpa:0.11 :dpt.serNum | cbor (json) | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: "001caffe1234" } | Device <i>KNX Serial Number</i> . |
| dev/mid | :dpa:0.12 :dpt.value2Ucount | cbor (json) | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 0x00fa } | Manufacturer Identifier |
| dev/hwv | :dpt.version | cbor (json) | GET | O | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: [1,2,3] } | Hardware version. |
| dev/fwv | :dpa:0.25 :dpt.version | cbor (json) | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: [1,2,3] } | Firmware version. |
| dev/hwt | :dpt.varString8859_1 | cbor (json) | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: {1: "0123AB"} | The hardware type is a manufacture-specific ID for a device type (MaC uses this ID for compatibility checks). Maximum length: 6 octets. |
| dev/model | :dpa:0.15 :dpt.utf8 | cbor (json) | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: "QAA987" } | Device Model Maximum length: 10 octets. |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|------------------------------------|----------------|--------------|----------|---|--|
| dev/sna | :dpa.0.57 :dpt.value1 Ucount | cbor (json) | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 1 } | KNX Subnet Address. Default: 255 (see [10]) |
| dev/da | :dpa.0.58 :dpt.value1 Ucount | cbor (json) | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 2 } | KNX Device Address. Default: 255 (see [10]) |
| dev/hname | :dpt.varStri ng8859_1 | cbor (json) | GET PUT | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: {1: "knx-001caffe1234. local" } | Device hostname for DNS resolution (minimum 60 and maximum 253 characters according to [RFC1035] clause 2.3.4). |
| dev/ipv6 | :dpt.ipv6 | cbor (json) | GET (PUT) | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: h'20010db8000300006 cd98ad28e881f68' } or Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: [[{1: h'20010db8000300006 cd98ad28e881f68'}, {1: h'fde58dba82e1000100 0000fffe000401'}]] | Array of device ipv6 addresses. The resource interface SHALL be "if=if.b" (see clause 2.5.3.8). |
| dev/fid | :dpt.value8 Ucount | cbor (json) | GET (PUT) | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 0x11222233a3 } | 40-bit KNX Fabric ID (see ULA in clause 2.6.2). Maximum: 0x00ff'ffff'ffff |
| dev/iid | :dpt.value8 Ucount | cbor (json) | GET (PUT) | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 0x00000033a3 } | 40-bit KNX Installation ID (see ULA in clause 2.6.5). Maximum: 0x00ff'ffff'ffff |
| dev/port | :dpt.value2 Ucount | cbor (json) | GET (PUT) | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 5683 } | Port number used for unicast comm. (see clause 2.6.3.1). |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|------------|----------|---|--|
| dev/mport | :dpt.value2 Ucount | cbor (json) | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 5683 } | Port number used for multicast discovery (see clause 2.6.4.1.) |
| dev/pm | :dpa.0.54 :dpt.binary Value | cbor (json) | GET PUT | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: false } | Programming Mode enable/disable. |

849 **2.5.7 Function Point Table (fp)**

850 **2.5.7.1 Introduction and Overview**

851 This clause describes the configuration of group events on a KNX IoT device. A MaC can choose
852 between several message exchange configurations. The definition of when to apply which message
853 exchange pattern is out-of-scope of this document. A KNX IoT device SHALL support at least the
854 following message exchange configurations:

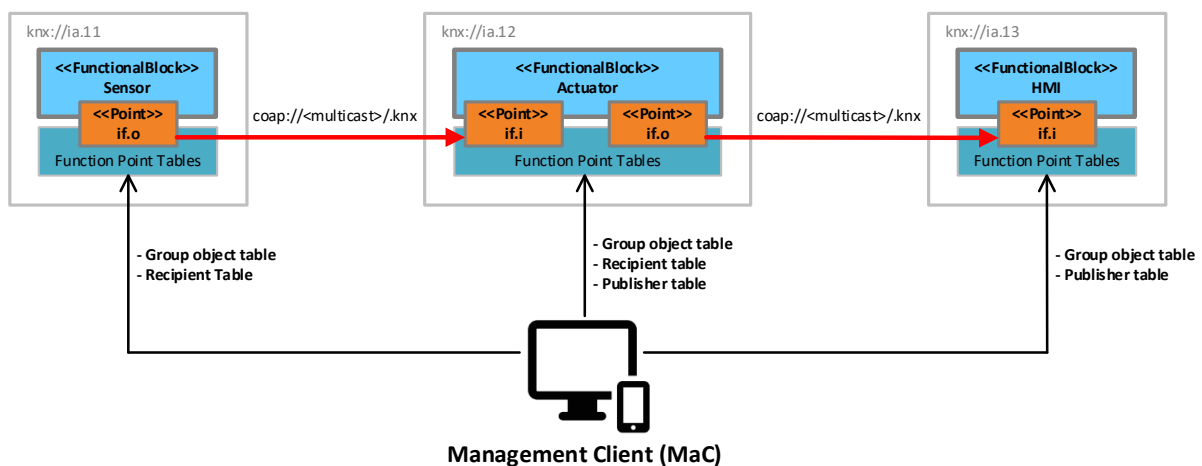
- 855 • Multicast message exchange
- 856 • Direct unicast message exchange

857 A KNX IoT device MAY support, and the KNX IoT Router SHALL support, the following message
858 exchange configuration:

- 859 • Endpoint subscription message exchange (see [12] "KNX IoT Router")

860 In Figure 8, the MaC configures a multicast message exchange, for example, between one or many
861 sensors (e.g., light switches) and one or many actuators (e.g., light actuators). In addition, the actuator
862 status is sent to an HMI (e.g., room unit) for visualization. For multicast group events, the MaC SHALL
863 configure the following Function Point Tables:

- 864 • GA and Points in the Group Object Table on all devices.
- 865 • Multicast send address in the Function Point Recipient Table on devices with "if.o" interfaces.
- 866 • Multicast listening address in the Function Point Publisher Table on devices with "if.i" interfaces.



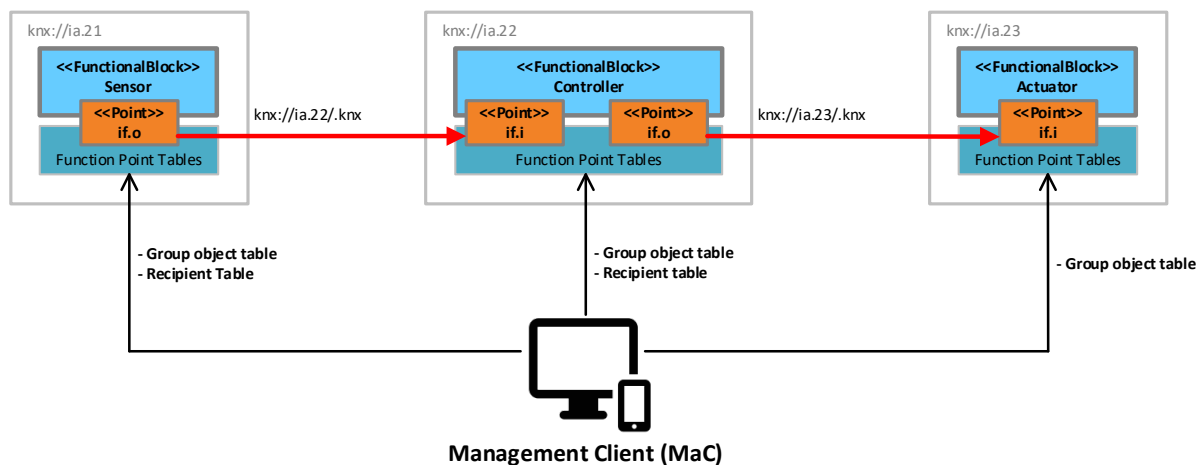
867

868

Figure 8 – Multicast Message Exchange

869 In the next example, the MaC configures direct unicast message exchange in networks where multicast
 870 reachability between devices is impossible or for applications that need reliable (confirmed)
 871 communication between devices. Figure 9 depicts a unicast example with a controller (e.g., HVAC
 872 controller) which gets sensor updates (e.g., room temperature sensor) and commands an actuator
 873 accordingly (e.g., radiator valve). The MaC SHALL configure for unicast group events the following
 874 Function Point Tables:

- 875 • GA and Points in the Group Object Table on all devices.
- 876 • Unicast destination address in the Function Point Recipient Table on devices with "if.o"
 877 interfaces (*KNX Individual Address* 21 and 22 are sending messages to *KNX Individual Address*
 878 22 and 23).
- 879 • No Function Point Publisher Table configuration on all devices.



880

Management Client (MaC)

881

Figure 9 – Direct Unicast Message Exchange

882 2.5.7.2 Device Load State Machine State

883 If a CoAP request method (GET, PUT, or POST) to Group Object Table, Function Point Recipient Table,
 884 or Function Point Publisher Table items or collections is possible depends on the current Device Load
 885 State Machine state (see clause 2.5.8). CoAP GET SHALL be possible in all Device Load State Machine
 886 states. However, in states loaded, unloaded, unloading, and loadcompleting (state \neq loading), the KNX
 887 IoT device SHALL return response code "4.05 Method Not Allowed" to PUT, POST, and DELETE
 888 requests.

889 2.5.7.3 Group Object Table Resource (fp/g)

890 2.5.7.3.1 Definition

891 A KNX IoT device SHALL implement a Group Object Table. The Group Object Table SHALL be
 892 writable; it is configured by the MaC. The Group Object Table contains configuration information for
 893 each *Group Object* used by the device.

894 A *Group Object* is represented by a manufacturer-specific resource path ("href": "{point-path}"). A
 895 *Group Object* has a set of mandatory and optional metadata members (see clause 2.5.11.3, "Metadata
 896 Query Parameter "m" and clause 2.5.11.4, "Metadata Resource Object"). A Metadata member is
 897 accessible as a resource behind the {point-path}. A MaC SHALL use metadata members such as CoV,
 898 heartbeat, min/max limitations, etc., to configure *Group Object* communication behavior.

899 If a function has extended features with additional configuration parameters, then the MaC MAY write
 900 values to other manufacturer-specific resource paths ({point-path}). This document does not specify how
 901 to implement manufacturer-specific Parameters and Diagnostic Properties.

902 Every *Group Object* SHALL implement a ("dpt") metadata for retrieving Datapoint Types and, if
 903 possible, semantic Datapoint Annotations ("rt").

904 KNX Datapoint Types are identified by a prefix (urn:knx:dpt) and a Datapoint Type separated by a dot as
 905 specified in [03] "KNX Information Model". For example, a DPT_BinaryValue is encoded as
 906 "urn:knx:dpt.binaryValue". Datapoint Types with the same main number have the same data type
 907 (e.g., integer or boolean), format (e.g., B1 or B2), and encoding. A different subnumber indicates a
 908 different dimension (different range and/or different unit). KNX Datapoint Types are defined in KNX
 909 System specifications, chapter 3/7/2, and are used accordingly in KNX IoT. The Datapoint Type SHALL
 910 be defined for every *Group Object* and can be retrieved by reading {point-path}?m=dpt.

911 All *Group Objects* SHOULD have a semantic Datapoint Annotation, for example, for filtering discovery
 912 requests. Datapoint annotations have the following structure: urn:knx:dpa.{functionalblock-
 913 id}>.<property-id>. Datapoint Annotations are inherited from the existing *Functional Block* and Property
 914 specification defined in the KNX Application Descriptions (KNX standard Volume 7). A Datapoint
 915 Annotation does not imply that a specific *Functional Block* functionality is implemented. Every *Group*
 916 *Object*, or rather the assigned {point-path}, SHOULD have a Datapoint Annotation unless the appropriate
 917 *Functional Block* and Property has not yet been defined in the KNX Application Descriptions.

918 A *Group Object* contains a list of *Group Addresses* ("ga"). However, only one sending *Group Address*
 919 can be used for a *Group Object*. Hence, if more than one *Group Address* is configured, then the first list
 920 item SHALL be used as sending *Group Address*. In addition, if multiple *Group Objects* are linked to the
 921 same Point ("href"), then the *Group Object* with the lowest "id" SHALL contain the sending *Group*
 922 *Address*. The "href" member SHALL reference a {point-path}.

923 Table 17 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL ("O") Group Object Table resources and the
 924 corresponding resource path names that SHALL be used.

925

Table 17 – Group Object Table resources and paths

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|----------------------------|-----------------|--------|---------------|---------|---|---|
| fp/g | NA | cbor | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: (see example below) | Write Group Object Table. Single Elements are identified by their "id". Existing elements are replaced, and not existing elements are added. An empty element (only "id") in the payload will cause the deletion of a corresponding existing element. |
| fp/g | NA | cbor | GET | M | Resp: Content- Format: application/link-format Payload: </fp/g/1>;ct=60 | Group object item linked list. |
| fp/g/{group- object-id} | NA | cbor | GET DELETE | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: (see example below) | Read/delete single list item. The group-object-id corresponds to the resource object "id" value as a number in ASCII format. |

926 2.5.7.3.2 Function Point Group Object Resource Object

927 Table 18 defines the MANDATORY ("M") Function Point Group Object resource object CBOR keys for
 928 configuring and reading Group Object Table items. MANDATORY ("M") attributes SHALL be present
 929 in the message.

930 **Table 18 – Function Point Group Object resource object CBOR keys**

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|----------|----------|----------------|----------|---|
| "id" | 0 | unsigned | M | The ID of the Group Object Table Entry. It has to be unique in the table (range 0...65 535). Note: There is no sorting requirement for IDs. |
| "ga" | 7 | unsigned array | M | A List of all connected <i>Group Addresses</i> . The Group Object Table SHALL support >= 20 array elements. |
| "cflag" | 8 | unsigned | M | Group Object Configuration Flags (see 2.5.7.3.3). |
| "href" | 11 | text string | M | Reference to the Point, which represents the data of this Group Object. |

931 In the following example, the MaC configures two Group Object Table items on a KNX IoT device. The
 932 "cflag" for the first item is configured as "read", "write", "transmit", and "update" (0b11011000). The
 933 "cflag" for the second item is configured as "transmit" (0b01000000).
 934
 935

| Write Group Object Table items. |
|---|
| <p>REQ: POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/g (Content-Format: application/cbor (60)), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>))</p> <p>Payload: [{ 0: 1, 11: "/p/ldsb1/soo", 7: [2305, 2401], 8: 216 //0b11011000 }, { 0: 2, 11: "/p/ldsb1/rsc", 7: [2306], 8: 64 //0b01000000 }]</p> |

936 2.5.7.3.3 Group Object Configuration Flags Resource Object "cflag"

937 A KNX IoT device SHALL support for each *Group Object* the non-volatile configuration flags "read",
 938 "init", "write", "transmit", and "update", describing the communication behavior of the corresponding
 939 *Group Object*. Like in KNX Classic, the configuration flags are configured by a MaC and are written to
 940 the device as part of the Group Object Table configuration, see 2.5.7.3 "Group Object Table".

941 The meaning and action of the configuration flags "read", "init", "write", "transmit", and "update" are
 942 explained in Table 19.

943 **Table 19 – Group Object configuration flags**

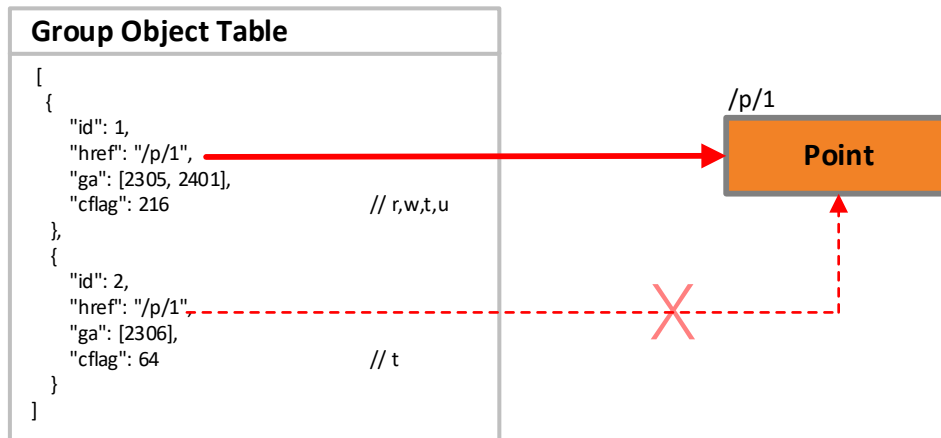
| Flag | Bit | Description |
|--|------|---|
| Reserved | 0, 1 | Default = false |
| Communication | 2 | Not used in KNX IoT since the flag is just a logical disjunction (OR) of the other configuration flags (default = false). |
| Read | 3 | false = <i>Group Object</i> value cannot be read. true = With a read command to a <i>Group Object</i> , the device sends this <i>Group Object's</i> value. |
| Write | 4 | false = <i>Group Object</i> value cannot be written. true = The device receives and overwrites its <i>Group Object</i> value (default for inputs). |
| Init (Value read on initialization) | 5 | false = Disable read after initialization. true = <i>Group Object</i> read request after initialization (e.g., power up). The read-Flag on the producer side is expected to be true to get a response. |
| Transmission | 6 | false = <i>Group Object</i> value is not transmitted. true = For CoV, event, or heartbeat, the device sends its <i>Group Object</i> value (default for outputs). |
| Update | 7 | false = <i>Group Object</i> value is not updated. true = The <i>Group Object</i> value is updated with a group value response message if flag w=true. |

944 2.5.7.3.4 Group Object Table Modifications

945 A MaC SHALL create or update *Group Object* items by sending a CoAP POST request to /{base-
 946 path}/fp/g, which contains the KNX IoT device *Group Object* configuration (see clause 2.6.7, Creating,
 947 Updating, and Deleting Resources).

948 A new item SHALL overwrite the entire item (incl. "ga", "cflag", etc.) in the case an item with the same
 949 "id" already exists on the device.

950 However, the MaC SHALL NOT configure multiple *Group Object* items with the same "href" Point
 951 reference but different "cflags" settings, as shown in the figure below, since this functionality is not
 952 supported in KNX Classic.



953

954

Figure 10 – Group Object Table Misconfiguration

955 **2.5.7.4 Function Point Recipient Table Resource (fp/r)**

956 2.5.7.4.1 Definition

957 The Function Point Recipient Table contains the destination address of outgoing group events (see clause
 958 2.3.4.2, "Function Point Tables"). This table SHALL be writable and is configured by the MaC. The
 959 Function Point Recipient Table SHALL support the following endpoint configurations:

- 960 • IPv6 unicast destination address of a KNX IoT Recipient device that provides a CoAP endpoint.
- 961 • or a *KNX Individual Address* or FQDN that can be resolved to an IPv6 unicast address of a KNX
 962 IoT Recipient device.
- 963 • or IPv6 multicast addresses to send a message to multiple KNX IoT Recipients.

964 Table 20 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") resources and the corresponding resource path names that
 965 SHALL be used for the Function Point Recipient Table.

966 **Table 20 – Function Point Recipient Table resource path and methods**

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------|--------|--------|----------|--|--|
| fp/r | NA | cbor | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: (see example below) | Write Function Point Recipient Table. Single elements are identified by their "id". Existing elements are replaced, and not existing elements are added. An empty element (only "id") in the payload will cause the deletion of a corresponding existing element. |
| fp/r | NA | cbor | GET | M | Res: Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: </fp/r/1>;ct=60 | Recipient item linked list |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------|---------------|----------|---|--|
| fp/r/{recipient-id} | NA | cbor | GET DELETE | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: (see example below) | Read/delete single list item. The recipient-id corresponds to the resource object "id" value as a number in ASCII format. |

967

968 2.5.7.4.2 Function Point Recipient Resource Object

969 A Function Point Recipient Resource Object represents either a direct unicast or a multicast message
970 exchange which defines an IPv6 endpoint configuration. The IPv6 address and the path are used as the
971 destination endpoint address in the CoAP message.

972 A KNX IoT device MAY publish messages to topics. The topic name structure in the superordinate
973 system is often given, such as "kitchen/sensors/". The destination address (URL including path) in the
974 Function Point Recipient Table SHALL be freely configurable. The MaC SHALL configure the topic
975 name in the Recipient Table (see examples in clause 2.3 "System Design") only in cases where the
976 endpoint path deviates from the standard KNX path (.knx).

977 The MaC can change some basic message transmission parameters with "non" and "mt" since some
978 applications MAY need adjusted settings. It is RECOMMENDED that KNX IoT devices use CoAP
979 default settings as defined in [RFC7252] clause 4.8. Manufacturers MAY support additional
980 configuration parameters conveyed as proprietary metadata parameters (see clause 2.5.11.3, "Metadata
981 Query Parameter "m"). However, this is out-of-scope of this document.

982 Table 21 defines the Function Point Recipient resource object CBOR keys for configuring and reading
983 Function Point Recipient Table items. MANDATORY ("M") attributes SHALL be present in the
984 message, CONDITIONAL ("C") attributes SHALL be present in some special cases and OPTIONAL
985 ("O") MAY are present in the message, but the attributes SHALL be supported on the device.

986

Table 21 - Function Point Recipient resource object CBOR keys

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|----------|----------|----------------|----------------|--|
| "id" | 0 | unsigned | M | The ID of the Function Point Recipient Table entry. It has to be unique in the table. |
| "ga" | 7 | unsigned array | M | A list of <i>Group Addresses</i> which to be sent to the configured Recipient. The Function Point Recipient Table SHALL support >= 20 array elements. A device SHALL accept empty "ga" arrays for the Function Point Recipient Table. |
| "url" | 10 | text string | O ^a | The URL identifies the Recipient endpoint. The CoAP URI schema SHALL be supported. |

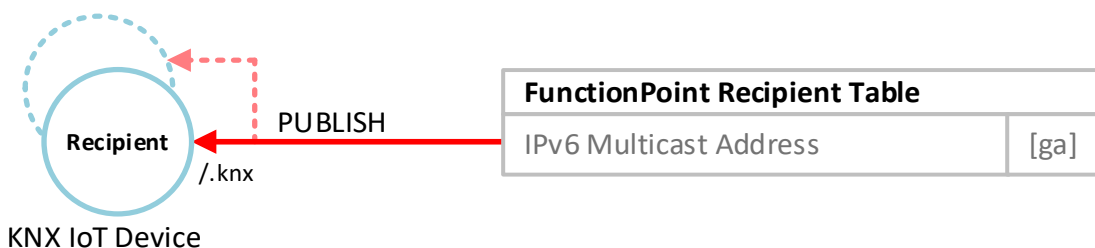
| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|--|----------|-------------|----------------|--|
| "ia" | 12 | unsigned | O ^a | KNX Individual Address of the Recipient. |
| "grpid" | 13 | unsigned | C ^a | Group ID for the multicast group identifier (see clause 2.6.5) for sending multicast messages to the network. The "grpid" SHALL be used for the multicast group identifier. |
| "at" | 14 | text string | C ^a | Access token id. Reference to the security credentials for message encryption. |
| "fid" | 25 | unsigned | C ^a | KNX Fabric ID of the Recipient. Not used in case Recipient has the same fabric ID (see clause 2.6.2 "Device IP Address"). |
| "iid" | 26 | unsigned | C ^a | KNX Installation ID of the Recipient. Not used in case Recipient is within the same installation (2.6.5 Multicast Group IP Addresses) |
| "non" | "non" | bool | O | true = Non-confirmable request. If "non" is omitted, the device SHALL assume a confirmed request (false) as default for unicast messages. Multicast messages SHALL be Non-confirmable (true). |
| "mt" | "mt" | unsigned | O | The number of maximum retransmission for confirmable and non-confirmable requests. If "mt" is omitted, the device SHALL assume no repetition (0) for non-confirmable requests and a maximum of four (4) retransmissions for confirmable requests. However, the device SHALL send not more than five (5) retransmissions. |
| ^a The Recipient can be identified either by "ia", "grpid", or by "url". | | | | |

988 2.5.7.4.3 Publish Group Events
 989 Table 22 describes the basic procedure for sending group event messages to Recipients and how the
 990 Function Point Tables are used.

991 **Table 22 – Publish Group Event Messages**

| Step | Procedure | Description |
|------|---|--|
| 1 | Check Point value. | - Check if a Point value has changed AND time since the last update is > min repetition time - OR time since last update > heartbeat (see clause 2.5.11.2) |
| 2 | Check group object configuration flags. | - KNX IoT device checks the group object configuration flags (see clause 2.5.7.3.3) if the corresponding Point value needs to be published. |
| 3 | Check Recipient Table items. | - The KNX IoT device searches Group Object Table items and Functional Point Recipient Table items with the same <i>Group Address</i> ("ga") configuration. |
| 4 | Send group message to Recipient. | - If the <i>Group Address</i> ("ga") configuration matches with a Functional Point Recipient Table item, then the KNX IoT device sends a group message to the network in the case: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o Functional Point Recipient Table item is configured with a valid multicast address ("grpid" or "url"). o Functional Point Recipient Table item is configured with a valid unicast address ("ia" or "url"). |
| 5 | Send group message to Subscriptions. | - If the Group Object Table contains a <i>Group Address</i> ("ga") configuration and a CoAP client has subscribed to ".knx" (CoAP observe), then the device SHALL send a notification to subscribed CoAP clients. |
| 6 | Update the last sent timestamp. | - If the message was sent to the network, the device SHALL update the last sent timestamp. This step is only applicable if heartbeat or minimum repetition timeout is configured. |

992
 993 Figure 11 shows a basic multicast Recipient configuration. Multicast group event notifications do not
 994 need additional IPv6 address resolving steps or acknowledgments; potential repetitions are also
 995 unnecessary. Therefore, the sending procedure of a multicast Recipient configuration is straightforward
 996 and follows the steps in Table 22.



997
 998 **Figure 11 – Multicast Function Point Recipient Table Item**

999 The following example configures the multicast Recipient item from Figure 11 with the default path
 1000 ".knx".

1001 The "grpId" attribute SHALL be used for multicast Recipient configuration, and the "ia" SHALL be used
 1002 for unicast Publisher configuration. The installation ID is needed for the Recipient IPv6 multicast address
 1003 since the *Group Address* is unique only within an installation but can be omitted if the Recipient belongs
 1004 to the same installation.

1005 The "url" attribute can be used for unicast as well as for multicast Publisher but SHALL NOT be used in
 1006 combination with "ia" or "grpId".

Function Point Recipient Table Configuration Example.

REQ:
 POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/r
 (Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 2,
    26: <recipient's installation ID>,
    13: <multicastGroupId>,
    14: <access token ID>,
    7: [2204, 2205, 2206]
  },
  {
    0: 3,
    10: "coap://<IP multicast>:<port>/<path>",
    14: <access token ID>,
    7: [2305, 2306, 2307, 2308]
  },
  {
    0: 4,
    13: <multicastGroupId>,
    14: <access token ID>,
    7: [2404, 2405, 2406]
  }
]
```

1007

1008 A MaC MAY configure a unicast communication between KNX IoT devices. The MaC can configure
 1009 unicast communication with a fixed IPv6 address, a *KNX Individual Address*, or an FQDN. In the case of
 1010 a *KNX Individual Address* or an FQDN configuration, the KNX IoT device has to resolve the *KNX*
 1011 *Individual Address* or FQDN to an Ipv6 unicast address before the device can publish events.

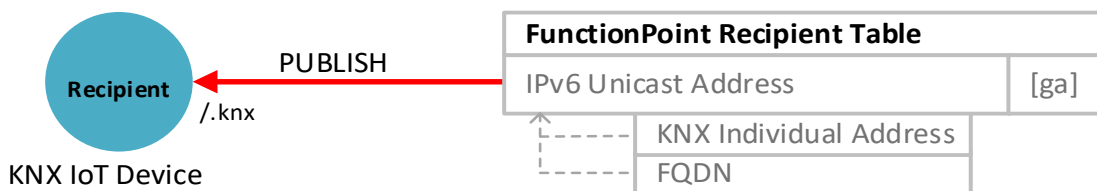


Figure 12 – Unicast Function Point Recipient Table Item

1014 The following example shows a Function Point Recipient Table configuration that uses an FQDN and a
 1015 *KNX Individual Address* as destination endpoint configuration. The KNX Fabric ID "fid" SHALL be
 1016 omitted if the Recipient belongs to the same project.

Function Point Recipient Table Configuration Example.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/r

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 5,
    25: <recipient's fabric ID>,
    12: <recipient's IA>,
    14: <access token ID>,
    7: [2505, 2506, 2507, 2508]
  },
  {
    0: 6,
    10: "coap://<unicast address or fqdn>:<port>/<path>",
    14: <access token ID>,
    7: [2605, 2606, 2607, 2608]
  },
  {
    0: 7,
    12: <recipient's IA>,
    14: <access token ID>,
    7: [2705, 2706, 2707, 2708]
  }
]
```

1017

1018 **2.5.7.5 Function Point Publisher Table Resource (fp/p)**

1019 2.5.7.5.1 Definition

1020 The Function Point Publisher Table contains the source address of incoming group events (see clause
 1021 2.3.4.2, "Function Point Tables"). This table SHALL be writable and is configured by the MaC. The
 1022 Function Point Publisher Table supports the following endpoint configurations:

- 1023 • IPv6 unicast subscription address of a KNX IoT Publisher device.
- 1024 • or IPv6 multicast addresses to receive messages from multiple KNX IoT Publishers.

1025 Table 23 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") resources and the corresponding resource path names that
 1026 SHALL be used for the Function Point Publisher Table.

1027

Table 23 – Function Point Publisher table

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------|---------------|----------|--|---|
| fp/p | NA | cbor | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: (see example below) | Writes the Function Point Publisher Table. Single elements are identified by their "id". Existing elements are replaced, and not existing elements are added. An empty element (only "id") in the payload will cause the deletion of a corresponding existing element. |
| fp/p | NA | cbor | GET | M | Res: Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: </fp/p/1>;ct=60 | Publisher item linked list |
| fp/r/{publisher-id} | NA | cbor | GET DELETE | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: (see example below) | Read/delete single list item. The publisher-id corresponds to the resource object "id" value as a number in ASCII format. |

1028

1029 2.5.7.5.2 Function Point Publisher Resource Object

1030 A Function Point Publisher Resource Object represents a multicast or a subscription message exchange.
1031 The IPv6 address is used as a unicast IPv6 subscription endpoint or a receiving multicast IPv6 address
1032 configuration.

1033 A KNX IoT device SHALL support multicast message exchange configurations and MAY support
1034 subscription (unicast address) configurations in the Function Point Publisher Table. However, a KNX IoT
1035 device SHALL support subscriptions on the resource ".knx" as defined in clauses 2.5.9.3 and 2.5.9.4. This
1036 allows clients, such as a MaC or Message Broker, to subscribe for event notifications on all KNX IoT
1037 devices.

1038 Table 24 defines the Function Point Publisher resource object CBOR keys for configuring and reading
1039 Function Point Publisher Table items. MANDATORY ("M") attributes SHALL be present in the
1040 message. CONDITIONAL ("C") attributes SHALL be present in some special cases and OPTIONAL
1041 ("O") may be present in the message, but the attributes SHALL be supported on the device.

1042

Table 24 – Function Point Publisher resource object

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|----------|----------|----------------|----------------|---|
| "id" | 0 | unsigned | M | The ID of the Function Point Publisher Table entry. It SHALL be unique in the table. |
| "ga" | 7 | unsigned array | M | A list of <i>Group Addresses</i> that SHALL be received from the configured Publisher. The Function Point Publisher Table SHALL support >= 20 array elements. A device SHALL accept empty "ga" arrays for the Function Point Publisher Table. |
| "url" | 10 | text string | C ^a | The URL identifies the Publishers endpoint for unicast communication. The CoAP URI schema SHALL be supported. |
| "ia" | 12 | unsigned | C ^a | The KNX Individual Address of the Publisher for unicast communication (see 2.5.5.5). |
| "grpid" | 13 | unsigned | C ^a | Group ID for the multicast group identifier (see clause 2.6.5). Used for multicast listening on the network. |
| "at" | 14 | text string | C ^a | Access token id. Reference to the security credentials for unicast subscription encryption. |
| "fid" | 25 | unsigned | C ^a | KNX Fabric ID of the Publisher. Not used in case the Publisher has the same KNX Fabric ID (see also clause 2.6.2 "Device IP Address"). |
| "iid" | 26 | unsigned | C ^a | KNX Installation ID of the Publisher. Not used in case the Publisher is within the same installation (2.6.5 Multicast Group IP Addresses) |

^a The Publisher can be identified either by "ia", "grpid", or "url".

1043

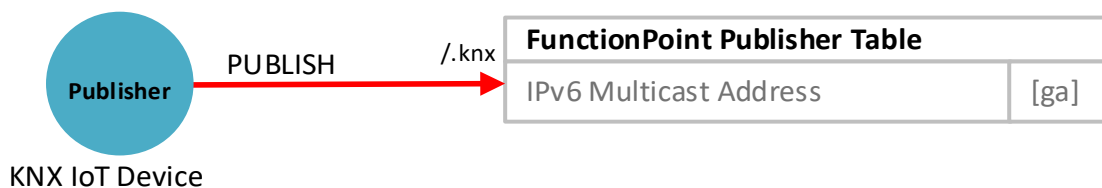
1044

1045

1046

1047

Figure 13 shows a KNX IoT device listening on an IPv6 multicast address. The Publisher sends a multicast event notification to the network. Conversely, a KNX IoT device receives the event notifications and updates from a configured *Group Address* or, rather, on the associated Point in the Group Object Table.



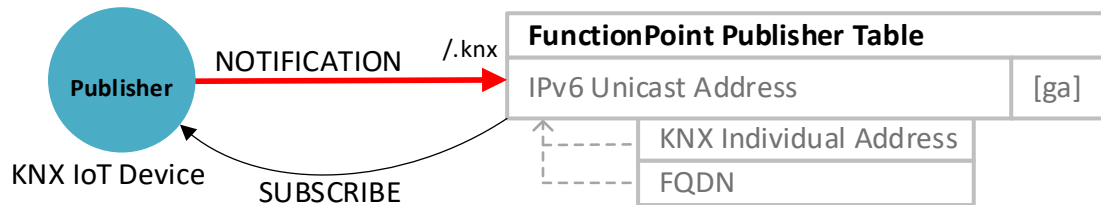
1048

1049

Figure 13 – Multicast Function Point Publisher Table Item

1050 The MaC MAY configure on a KNX IoT device a subscription endpoint (Publisher) with a project-
 1051 specific resource endpoint (path). The resource path on the Publisher in a superordinate system is often
 1052 given, for example, "kitchen/sensors/". Therefore, the KNX IoT device SHALL support project-specific
 1053 subscription endpoints in the Function Point Publisher Table.

1054



1055

1056

Figure 14 – Unicast Function Point Publisher Table Item

1057 A KNX IoT device MAY have to subscribe (see [12] "KNX IoT Router") or send group events to a
 1058 device that belongs to another KNX IoT installation. The KNX Fabric ID "fid" is needed for resolving the
 1059 Publisher Ipv6 unicast address since the *KNX Individual Address* is unique only within an installation (see
 1060 clause 2.6.1.2, "Device Discovery with DNS-SD"). The KNX Fabric ID SHALL be omitted if the
 1061 Publisher belongs to the same fabric.

1062 The "ia" attribute SHALL be used for unicast Publisher configuration and the "grpid" for multicast
 1063 Publisher configuration. The installation ID is needed for the Publisher Ipv6 multicast address since the
 1064 *Group Address* is unique only within an installation.

1065 The "url" attribute can be used for unicast as well as for multicast Publisher but SHALL NOT be used in
 1066 combination with "ia" or "grpid".

Function Point Publisher Table Configuration Example.

```

REQ:
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/p
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))
Payload:
[
  {
    0: 7,
    25: <publisher fabric ID>,
    12: <publisher's IA>,
    14: <access token ID>,
    7: [2305, 2306, 2307, 2308]
  },
  {
    0: 8,
    10: "coap://<IP multicast, unicast address or fqdn>:<port>/<path>",
    7: [2309, 2310, 2311, 2312]
  },
  {
    0: 9,
    26: <publisher installation ID>,
    13: <multicastGroupId>,
    7: [2320, 2321, 2322, 2323]
  }
]
    
```

1067

1068 **2.5.8 Application Program Object Resource (ap)**1069 A KNX application program is a software that runs on a KNX device. The program is used to control and
1070 automate various functions within an installation.1071 The Application Program Functional Block (see [03] "KNX Information Model") contains global
1072 information about the internal application program, such as the Device Load State Machine.

1073 Table 25 defines configuration resources for KNX IoT that a device MANDATORY ("M") supports.

1074

Table 25 – Application Program resources and paths

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|--|----------------|------------|----------|--|--|
| ap | :fb.3 | link-format | GET | M | Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: </a/lsm>;ct=60, </ap/pv>;rt=":dpa.3.13"; ct=60 | Application Program <i>Functional Block</i> . |
| ap/pv | :dpa.3.13 :dpt.progr amVersio n | cbor (json) | GET PUT | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: [1,2,3] } | The version of the Application Program. |
| a/lsm | NA | cbor | GET | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 3: 1 } | Function the Point Table state: 1 = "loaded" |
| a/lsm | NA | cbor | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 2: 1 } | Change the Function Point Table state: 1 = "startloading" ¹⁾ 2 = "loading" |
| | | | | | Res: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 3: 2 } | |
| a/lsm | NA | cbor | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 2: 2 } | Change the Function Point Table state: = "loadcomplete" |
| | | | | | Res: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 3: 1 } | |

1) Encoding of load commands and load states is reused from KNX Classic's LSM, see [09][10].

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------|--------|--------|---------|--|---|
| | | | | | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 2: 4 } Res: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 3: 0 } | Change Function Point Table state and resets the resources "fp/g", "fp/r", "fp/p", and "p". 0 = "unloaded" |

1075

1076 **2.5.8.1 Device Load State Machine Command (a/lsm)**

1077 The Device Load State Machine controls the access to different resources and the runtime behavior of the
 1078 application program.

1079 If the Device Load State Machine is not loaded (e.g., unloaded), the following resources SHALL NOT be
 1080 evaluated:

- 1081 • Group Object Table (fp/g)
- 1082 • Function Point Recipient Table (fp/r)
- 1083 • Function Point Publisher Table (fp/p)
- 1084 • Parameters (p)

1085 That means runtime communication is impossible if the Device Load State Machine is not set to "loaded".

1086 The transitions between the states SHOULD be less than 30 seconds. If a KNX IoT device cannot
 1087 immediately respond after a state transition, for example, from "unloaded" to "loading" because the
 1088 device restarts during the loading procedure, then the server SHALL return 2.04 CHANGED with the
 1089 Max-Age option to indicate the number of seconds a MaC SHALL wait before sending the subsequent
 1090 request.

1091 The value of the Device Load State Machine SHALL be stored in non-volatile memory because the state
 1092 has to be preserved after restart or power failure. Table 26 and Table 27 describe the MANDATORY
 1093 ("M") and OPTIONAL ("O") states and events of the Device Load State Machine.

1094

Table 26 – Device Load State Machine States

| Load State ²⁾ | Support | Notes |
|--------------------------|----------|---|
| unloaded (0) | M | No data is loaded. The associated resources have been reset to their default values. |
| Loaded (1) | M | Valid data is loaded. Only in this state the associated data SHALL be considered valid; in all other states, the data SHALL be considered invalid. |

²⁾ Encoding load states is reused from KNX Classic's LSM, see [10].

| Load State ²⁾ | Support | Notes |
|--------------------------|---------|--|
| Loading (2) | M | Load process is active. |
| Unloading (4) | O | Unload process is active. |
| Loadcompleting (5) | O | Intermediate state between "loading" and "loaded". |

1095

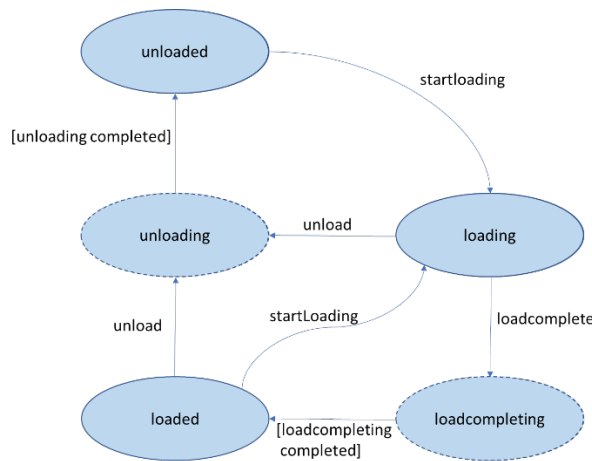
1096

Table 27 – Device Load State Machine Events

| Load Events ³⁾ | Support | Notes |
|---------------------------|---------|--|
| nop (0) | O | No operation |
| startloading (1) | M | Request to start the loading of the loadable part |
| loadcomplete (2) | M | Request to complete the loading of the loadable part. Possible checksum SHALL be calculated, all data SHALL be declared valid, and the Device Load State Machine SHALL change to "loaded". If the transition from "loading" to "loaded" takes more than two seconds, e.g., by complex checksum calculation, the Load State shall first change to the intermediate state "loadcompleting" and change to "loaded" after the calculation is finished. |
| Unload (4) | M | Request to unload the loadable part. |

1097

1098 The related resources SHALL be used immediately after the Device Load State Machine has reached the
 1099 state "loaded".



1100

1101

Figure 15 – Device Load State Machine

³⁾ Encoding load events is reused from KNX Classic’s LSM, see [10].

1102 2.5.8.2 Device Load State Machine Resource Object

1103 Table 28 defines JSON keys and the CBOR mapping for CoAP request and response attributes of the
1104 "a/lsm" resource object:

1105 Table 9 defines JSON keys and the CBOR mapping for CoAP request and response members of "/.well-
1106 known/knx". MANDATORY ("M") attributes SHALL be present in the message.

1107 **Table 28 – Device Load State Machine Resource Object**

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|----------|----------|-------------|----------|---|
| "cmd" | 2 | Text string | M | Service command. Enum: startloading, unload, loadcomplete |
| "status" | 3 | Text string | M | Current status. Enum: loaded, loading, unloaded, unloading, loadcompleting |

1108

1109 2.5.9 S-Mode Messaging Resource (.knx)

1110 2.5.9.1 Definition

1111 A KNX IoT device SHALL send and receive messages on configured multicast addresses (S-Mode
1112 messaging endpoint) as described in clause 2.6.9, "S-Mode Group Communication".

1113 The KNX IoT device (server) SHALL provide a resource ".knx" of resource type "rt=urn:knx:g.s" for
1114 unicast clients (device root path without /{base-path}).

1115 If a client sends a valid unicast or multicast request (see 2.6.9) to ".knx" on a KNX IoT device (server),
1116 then the KNX IoT device SHALL check the Group Object Table if the corresponding "ga" is configured
1117 and write the "value" to the configured Point.

1118 The KNX IoT device SHALL listen on configured multicast addresses (see 2.5.7.5).

1119 A Message Broker such as a KNX IoT Router [12] MAY want to subscribe for S-Mode group
1120 notifications. Therefore, the resource ".knx" SHALL support subscriptions (CoAP observe), incl. "lt" and
1121 "non" query parameters according to clauses 2.5.9.3 and 2.5.9.4.

1122 If a KNX IoT device (client) has successfully subscribed to ".knx" or sends a simple GET request, then
1123 the device SHALL return with a CoAP response code "2.05 Content"

1124 A KNX IoT device SHALL provide the following resources for Publisher and Recipient communication.
1125 Table 29 defines S-Mode communication resources for KNX IoT that a device MANDATORY ("M")
1126 supports.

1127 **Table 29 – Resources for Publisher and Recipient Communication**

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------|--------|--------|----------|--|---|
| .knx | :g.s | cbor | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: (see example in clause 2.6.9) | The Publisher sends a notification to the KNX IoT device (Recipient). |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------|--------|-------------|----------|---|--|
| .knx | :g.s | cbor | OBSERVE GET | M | Res: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: (see example above and in clause 2.6.9) | Clients can subscribe to the S-Mode messaging from a device to get all S-Mode notifications from the device. |

1128 2.5.9.2 Group Notification Resource Object

1129 To reduce message payload size, the following CBOR keys SHALL be used for Group Messages. The
1130 following fields are MANDATORY for S-Mode notification events:

- 1131 • **sia**: The source *KNX Individual Address* SHALL be present in the message payload. If a Message
1132 Broker (KNX IoT Router) is between the Publisher and Recipient, then the Publisher *KNX*
1133 *Individual Address* SHALL be in the message payload. Leading zeros (e.g., multiple "0" in
1134 JSON) in the *KNX Individual Address* SHALL be omitted.
- 1135 • **s**: The S-Mode message object SHALL contain a service type and a value for write and response
1136 service type.

1137

1138 Table 30 defines JSON keys and the CBOR mapping for CoAP S-Mode notification events.

1139 MANDATORY ("M") attributes SHALL be present in the message, and OPTIONAL ("O") may be
1140 present in the message but the attributes SHALL be supported on the device.

1141

Table 30 – JSON keys for Group Object notification

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|----------|----------|---------------------------------------|----------|--|
| "value" | 1 | see clause 2.5.13, "Datatype Mapping" | M | <i>Group Object</i> value |
| "sia" | 4 | Unsigned | M | Source ID (device <i>KNX Individual Address</i>). |
| "s" | 5 | map | M | S-Mode Group Message |
| "st" | 6 | text string | M | Service type code (write=w, read=r, ack/response=a) Enum: w, r, a |
| "ga" | 7 | unsigned | M | <i>Group Address</i> |

1142

1143 2.5.9.3 Lifetime Query Parameter "It"

1144 The lifetime (seconds) of a subscription on ".knx" (S-Mode messages) SHALL be configured together
1145 with a CoAP observe request. If no lifetime query parameter of type unsigned integer is included in the
1146 initial CoAP observe or the requested lifetime is not supported by the server, then the server SHALL
1147 return a response code of "4.00 Bad Request".

1148 A KNX IoT device SHALL support a minimum lifetime of 86400 seconds (24h).

1149 **2.5.9.4 Non-Confirmable Notification Query Parameter "non"**

1150 The CoAP observe request MAY contain a "non" query parameter of type boolean that indicates whether
 1151 a resulting notification SHALL be sent over non-confirmable transport. The default setting for
 1152 notification is confirmed ("non"=false) if "non" is absent in the CoAP observe request.

1153 **2.5.10 Functional Block Resource (f)**

1154 The *Functional Block* resource "f" provides a list of *Functional Blocks*.

1155 The "f" resource MAY contain additional *Functional Blocks* beside the announced *Functional Blocks* in
 1156 "/.well-known/core" (e.g., disabled functionality). However, the response SHALL contain at least the
 1157 same *Functional Block* links (f/<fb-id-instance>) as in the "/.well-known/core" response.

1158 The resource type ("rt") of a *Functional Block* SHALL contain the prefix ":fb." Followed by the
 1159 *Functional Block* ID according to KNX standard Volume 7.

1160 The "urn:knx" namespace identifier SHALL be omitted in the response to reduce payload.

1161 The *Functional Block* resources "f/{fb-id-instance}" SHALL support the application/link-format
 1162 containing links to the *Functional Block* Properties (p/{property-path}). This allows clients to discover
 1163 Points with a subsequent request.

1164 Table 31 defines *Functional Block* resources for KNX IoT that a device MANDATORY ("M") supports.

1165

Table 31 – Functional Block resource

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|--------|----------|---|---|
| f | NA | application/link-format | GET | M | Res: Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: </f/rts>;rt=":fb.321";ct=40 | The list contains all <i>Functional Blocks</i> of a device. |
| f/{fb-id-instance} | NA | application/link-format | GET | M | Res: Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: </p/rts/temproom>;rt=":dpa:321.51";ct=50 | The list contains all Properties of a <i>Functional Block</i> . |

1166

1167 **2.5.11 Parameter and Diagnostic Property Resource (p)**

1168 **2.5.11.1 General Requirements**

1169 Parameter and diagnostic Properties are used for sensor, actuator, parameter, and diagnostic values, such
 1170 as getting the current sensor value or setting a setpoint. Parameter and diagnostic Properties are addressed
 1171 by URIs and can be directly accessed (read) and optionally manipulated (write). The following rules
 1172 apply for CBOR as well as for JSON.

1173 The {point-path} is a concatenation of {base-path}, the MANDATORY "p/" and a manufacturer
 1174 specific {property-path}. The following examples are valid resource paths for Properties:

- 1175 • *Functional Block* ID/instance and Property ID (see KNX standard Volume 7): p/321/1/51
- 1176 • *Functional Block* and Property names (see KNX standard Volume 7): p/rts/temproom
- 1177 • Simple numbers: p/1

1178 [RFC8259] defines JSON as a serialized value. This means that a JSON value without brackets is also
 1179 valid JSON (e.g., 25.5 or "TextString"). A GET response or, if supported, a CoAP observe notification
 1180 [RFC8323] of simple Datapoint Types (see clause 2.5.13 "Datatype Mapping") SHALL be conveyed as
 1181 simple JSON value without brackets to reduce the payload size. However, this specific rule SHALL NOT
 1182 apply to CBOR. CBOR already has a compact format and SHALL be conveyed as a key/value pair.

CBOR and JSON Diagnostic Property read (w/ OSCORE) example for a value of a simple Datapoint Type.

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/{point-path}
 (OSCORE(code(GET), kid(<osc-id>)))

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

{ 1: 100.0 }

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/{point-path}
 (Accept: application/json (50), OSCORE(code(GET), kid(<osc-id>)))

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/json (50))

Payload:

100.0

1183
 1184 The same rule applies if a client wants to change a Parameter Property; the JSON payload SHALL
 1185 convey the value without brackets.

CBOR and JSON Parameter Property write (w/ OSCORE) example for a value of a simple Datapoint Type.

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/{point-path}
 (Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(PUT), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

{ 1: 20.0 }

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/{point-path}
 (Content-Format: application/json (50), OSCORE(code(PUT), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

20.0

1186

1187 Complex Datapoint Types SHALL be conveyed without a "value" key (only JSON) as a simple array
 1188 according to clause 2.5.13, "Datatype Mapping", to reduce the payload size.

CBOR and JSON Diagnostic Property read (w/ OSCORE) example for a value of a complex Datapoint Type.

REQ:
 POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/{point-path}
 (OSCORE(code(GET), kid(<osc-id>)))

RES:
 2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))
Payload:
 { 1: [13.0, 18.0, 20.0, 21.0] }

REQ:
 POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/{point-path}
 (Accept: application/json (50), OSCORE(code(GET), kid(<osc-id>)))

RES:
 2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/json (50))
Payload:
 [13.0, 18.0, 20.0, 21.0]

1189
 1190 However, in some cases, Parameter or Diagnostic Property values are conveyed with additional data. In
 1191 that case, the JSON value SHALL be identified by the key "value". For example, if the value has
 1192 additional status information (see clause 2.5.11.5 "Status and Command Resource Object (Z8)") or the
 1193 value is conveyed with other metadata (see clause 2.5.11.3, "Metadata Query Parameter "m"). Therefore,
 1194 a JSON client SHOULD consistently implement both message types (only value and as key/value pair).

1195 Table 32 defines configuration resources for KNX IoT that a device MANDATORY ("M") supports.

1196 **Table 32 – Parameter and Diagnostic Properties**

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------------------|--------|---------|--|---|
| p | NA | application/link-format | GET | O | Res: Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: <p/rts/temproom>;rt=": dpa.321.51";ct=60 | The list contains all datapoints of a device. |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------|---------|---|---|
| p | NA | cbor, (json) | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/json Payload: [{ "href ":"<point- path>", "value":"abc " }, { "href":"<point-path>", "value":21.0 "min":20.0, "max":25.0 }, ...] | Writes a set of parameters to a KNX IoT device. Each collection item SHALL contain an "href" resource identifier. |

1197

1198 2.5.11.2 Point Value Update Notification

1199 Notifications to Subscriber devices SHALL be based upon the criteria contained in application
1200 configurations (e.g., lighting or HVAC) and are activated with the transmission configuration "cflag"
1201 (transmit). A notification SHALL be sent when the heartbeat time has elapsed since the previous message
1202 or the configured change of value (CoV) has exceeded the same value. Heartbeat time, MinRepTime, or
1203 change of value (CoV) are optional metadata members; see clause 2.5.11.3, "Metadata Query Parameter
1204 "m" for more details. However, a notification SHALL NOT be sent before the minimum repetition time
1205 (MinRepTime) has elapsed.

1206 All Subscription notifications with a configured heartbeat time SHALL contain a Max-Age CoAP option
1207 containing the remaining time.

1208 Hence, *Group Objects* and subscriptions supporting event notifications require the specification of the
1209 following metadata parameters:

- 1210 • CoV
- 1211 • MinRepTime
- 1212 • Heatbeat

1213 2.5.11.3 Metadata Query Parameter "m"

1214 Metadata members are Point attributes used to annotate, tag, and describe *Group Objects*, Parameters, and
1215 Diagnostic Properties. Every Point has a set of metadata members. Metadata members are modeled as
1216 key/value pairs and addressable via the {point-path} and query parameters as specified and shown below.

1217 The following resources SHALL support metadata but other resources MAY support metadata members
1218 as well:

- 1219 • /{base-path}/p/{property-path}

1220 To retrieve the value of {metadata-member}, a KNX IoT device SHALL accept a GET request to the URI
1221 {point-path}?m={metadata-member}&m={metadata-member}. If at least one of the requested metadata
1222 {metadata-member} is supported, then the device SHALL return a response with CoAP response code
1223 "2.05 Content". The response payload SHALL contain the {metadata-member} as key, and the
1224 {metadata-value} of the specified metadata as value but missing or not supported metadata member fields
1225 (e.g., unit) SHALL be omitted in the response.

- 1226 If none of the requested metadata {metadata-member} is supported, the device SHALL return a response
 1227 with CoAP response code "4.04 Not Found" with an empty payload.
- 1228 Suppose the client requests a specific {metadata-member} (e.g., m=unit), but the metadata member field
 1229 is not supported on this datapoint; then the device SHALL return a response with CoAP response code
 1230 "5.01 Not Implemented".

CBOR Metadata read example for selected metadata members.

REQ:

GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/{point-path}?m=min&m=max

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

```
{ "min": 0.0, "max": 50.0 }
```

- 1231
 1232 The metadata query parameter is used with GET to retrieve a subset of metadata items for the selected
 1233 resource. The parameter has the following form: m={metadata-member} for which {metadata-member}
 1234 can be either a single metadata identifier or wildcard ("m" or "m=*") to select all existing metadata.

JSON Metadata read example for all metadata members.

REQ:

GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/{point-path}?m

(Accept: application/json (50))

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/json (50))

Payload:

```
{
  "id": "knx://sn.<serialnumber>/p/rts/temproom",
  "rt": [":dpa.321.51"],
  "dpt": ":dpt.valueTemp",
  "value": 21.0,
  "if": [":if.o", ":if.d"],
  "unit": "DEG_C",
  "min": 0.0,
  "max": 50.0,
  "mrt": 2,
  "cov": 0.5,
  "hbt": 900,
  "sns": true,
  "ga": [1234]
}
```

1235

1236 **2.5.11.4 Metadata Resource Object**

1237 KNX IoT defines a standardized basic set of metadata that MAY be applied to Points (see clause 5.1.3).
 1238 Standardized KNX IoT metadata resource names (key) do not contain a namespace.

1239 All Point metadata resources SHALL support the CBOR format (see clause 2.2.4 "Content-Format").
 1240 Table 33 defines the metadata members for KNX IoT that the server MANDATORY ("M") or
 1241 OPTIONAL ("O") supports. (PUT) on metadata is OPTIONAL since these values are often preconfigured
 1242 (e.g., with MaC).

1243

Table 33 – KNX IoT common metadata

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Method | Support | Notes |
|----------|----------|-------------|--------------|----------------------|--|
| "id" | 9 | text string | GET | M | ID: An identifier for a data item that is not dependent on the data item's location. It SHALL be permanent and SHALL move with the data if the data changes its location. The ID SHOULD use the <i>KNX Serial Number</i> LRI format defined in 2.6.1.4 "Linkage and Resolution" (e.g., knx://sn.1caffe1234/p/rts/temproom) |
| "href" | 11 | text string | GET | M | Reference to the Point, which represents the data of this Point. The "href" SHALL be used as a Point identifier for writing a Point collection but can be omitted in a metadata query response. |
| "value" | 1 | see DPT | GET (PUT) | M | Current datapoint value. |
| "rt" | "rt" | text string | GET | M^a | Type: The specific type name of the data item is equivalent to a resource type (rt). A Point with a specific type can be discovered via /.well-known/core?rt={type} (see clause 2.6.1.3.6.4 "Resource Type "rt""). |
| "if" | "if" | text string | GET | M^a | Interface: An interface provides a view for organizing Points for discovery (see clause 2.5.3 "Interface Types (if)") and for interactions, such as access rights. Points can be discovered via /.well-known/core?if={if}. Therefore, the values SHALL contain the relative URN format (see clause 1.4.5) of the interface type (e.g., ":if.sec"). |
| "desc" | "desc" | text string | GET (PUT) | O | Description: A localizable description of the data item. |
| "dpt" | "dpt" | text string | GET | M^a | KNX Datapoint Type (see clause 2.5.11.4.1.1) |

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Method | Support | Notes |
|----------|----------|---------------------|--------------|------------|--|
| "unit" | "unit" | text string | GET | O | Unit: The engineering unit of the data item. KNX units are defined by QUDT (http://qudt.org/vocab). For example, an air temperature unit (°C) is encoded as follows: DEG_C. |
| "min" | "min" | float | GET (PUT) | O | Min: The minimum value allowed for the data item (Point). |
| "max" | "max" | float | GET (PUT) | O | Max: The maximum value allowed for the data item (Point). |
| "mrt" | "mrt" | integer | GET (PUT) | O | MinRepTime: Minimum delay in seconds until the next message is sent. |
| "cov" | "cov" | integer | GET (PUT) | O | Change of Value: The Point sends a notification message if the point's value change has exceeded this Change of Value (CoV) threshold. |
| "hbt" | "hbt" | integer | GET (PUT) | O | Heartbeat: A Point sends a periodic value update to indicate normal operation or to synchronize other devices. |
| "sns" | "sns" | integer | GET (PUT) | O | Sequence Number Synchronization: Sequence number synchronization is disabled if false or the metadata member is absent. If configured (true), then a read/write request to the Point value triggers message counter synchronization (see also clause 3.6.4 "Message Replay Protection"). |
| "ga" | "ga" | Array [unsigned] | GET | (M) | <i>Group Address</i> : Configured <i>Group Addresses</i> for S-Mode communication (<group-address>). A Point with a group-address can also be discovered via /.well-known/core?d=urn:knx:g.s.{group-address}. |

^a The value SHALL be an empty string ("") if the resource definition states NA.

1244
1245 Metadata members on a KNX IoT device MAY be writable. To set the value of {metadata-member}, a
1246 KNX IoT device MAY accept a PUT request to the URI {point-path} containing one {metadata-member}
1247 and its new value in the payload. A single PUT request payload SHALL contain only one writable
1248 {metadata-member} as "value": <metadata-value> key/value pair.

CBOR Metadata write example.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/{point-path}?m=min
 (Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(PUT), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

{ 1: 0.0 }

RES:

2.04 CHANGED

- 1249
- 1250 2.5.11.4.1.1 Datapoint Type "dpt"
- 1251 The KNX datapoint type is a combination of a data type and a dimension. The "dpt" attribute is an opaque
 1252 string indicating a specific KNX datapoint type. The KNX Classic DPT names from KNX standard
 1253 Chapter 3/7/2, "Datapoint Types" SHALL be used. The following conversion rules SHALL be applied on
 1254 KNX Classic DPT names for KNX datapoint types (see also DPT names in [03] "KNX Information
 1255 Model"):
- 1256 • "DPT_" is removed.
 - 1257 • "_" is removed.
 - 1258 • square brackets [] are replaced with "a" and "a_".
 - 1259 • "/" is replaced with "p".
 - 1260 • numbers are kept.
 - 1261 • terms expressing a proper name, or a specific abbreviation shall be converted to lowercase; this rule
 1262 is rather a list than an exact (regular) expression; see the example below:
 - 1263 • HVAC to hvac, HPM to hpm, RGB to rgb, ASCII to ascii, DALI to dali, Mbus to mbus
 - 1264 • terms expressing a (combined) unit shall not be changed; see the example below:
 - 1265 • kVARh, MWh, mm, 100Msec
 - 1266 • the resulting string is prefixed with "urn:knx:dpt." in the case of a standard KNX DPT. The leading
 1267 "urn:knx" prefix SHALL be omitted on the "dpt" metadata of a Point (e.g., ":dpt.valueTemp").
- 1268 **2.5.11.5 Status and Command Resource Object (Z8)**
- 1269 In CoAP, the Z8 status/command feature (see KNX Specifications Chapter 3/7/2) is an optional feature of
 1270 a Point. If a value is out-of-service, overridden, or in a fault state, this information is provided with the
 1271 value as additional information. Consequently, all Z8 data types (e.g., V16Z8, U8Z8, etc.) SHOULD be
 1272 mapped to simple data types without Z8.
- 1273 For Points supporting the Z8 feature, a KNX IoT device SHALL deliver Z8 additional status information
 1274 accompanied by the value only if the status deviates from "normal". A client SHALL handle values
 1275 accompanied with additional Z8 status information, especially when the value is not present but only the
 1276 Z8 status information, for example, in case the value is out-of-service.
- 1277 The status/command extension Z8 has a dual representation, i.e., the representation is different depending
 1278 on the role of status (response, info report paradigm) or command (write paradigm).

1279

Table 34 – Status and Command JSON/CBOR keys

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Description |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|--|
| "cmd" | 2 | unsigned | KNX Z8 command is represented by an 8-bit enumeration => CBOR unsigned. The following commands MAY are supported on a Point: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - override: Temporary override of a sensor or actuator value. - release: Undo "override", leads to normal operation of the Point using the actual value. - setOSV: Disable functionality of a Point such as a configuration parameter is void (function disabled) or a sensor is disabled. - resetOSV: Undo "setOSV", leads to normal operation of the Point using the actual value. |
| "overridden" | 111 ("o") | bool | True = Value is currently overridden |
| "osv" | "osv" | bool | True = No valid value available |
| "fault" | 102 ("f") | text string | Error incl. fault information |

1280

1281 In the presence of Z8 values, the payload is represented as a map, and the Z8 is embedded in the payload
1282 under the "status" resp. "cmd" key. JSON examples:

1283 Value status = normal: 100

1284 Value status = overridden: { "value": 100, "overridden": true }

1285 Value status = out-of-service: { "osv": true }

1286 Value status = fault: { "fault": "general fault" }

1287 Value command = override/release: { "value": 50, "cmd": "override" }

1288 Value command = setOSV/resetOSV: { "cmd": "setOSV" }

Command Example.

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/{point-path}

(Content-Format: application/json (50), Accept: application/json (50), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
{ "value": 50, "cmd": "override" }
```

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/json (50))

Payload:

```
{ "value": 50, "overridden": true }
```

1289

1290 2.5.11.6 Lifetime Query Parameter "lt"

1291 The lifetime (seconds) of a subscription on parameter and diagnostic Properties SHALL be configured
 1292 together with a CoAP observe request. If no lifetime query parameter of type unsigned integer is included
 1293 in the initial CoAP observe or the requested lifetime is not supported by the server, then the server
 1294 SHALL return a response code of "4.00 Bad Request".

1295 A KNX IoT device SHALL support a minimum lifetime of 86400 seconds (24h).

1296 2.5.12 Subscription Resource (sub)

1297 2.5.12.1 Definition

1298 A KNX IoT device MAY support subscriptions on predefined Points, described in clause 2.6.10, "Point
 1299 Publish/Subscribe".

1300 Table 35 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") subscription resources (sub) and the corresponding resource
 1301 path names that SHALL be used if the KNX IoT device supports subscriptions.

1302 **Table 35 – Mandatory and optional subscription resources**

| Resource path | rt & Data Types (rt) | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|----------------------|--------|--------|---------|-------------------|---|
| sub | NA | NA | DELETE | M | Res: 2.02 DELETED | Delete all device CoAP observe subscriptions. |

1304

1305 2.5.13 Datatype Mapping

1306 2.5.13.1 Introduction and general requirements

1307 The following tables illustrate the representation of KNX datatypes in CBOR and JSON.

1308 In some cases, as possible with CBOR, variable-length encoding will provide a shorter notation,
 1309 e.g., unsigned numbers < 24 will be encoded in a single byte in CBOR, even if KNX Classic datatype
 1310 representation is a 32-bit unsigned number.

1311 Three categories of datatypes are discerned:

- 1312 1. KNX simple datatypes: direct mapping to a simple CBOR/JSON datatype exists.
- 1313 2. KNX complex datatypes: two or more simple CBOR/JSON datatypes are needed - those will be
 1314 aggregated in an array.
- 1315 3. KNX Z8 data types: has different representations depending on the service context used (status
 1316 or command).

1317 NOTE 3 Datatype modeling is not limited to KNX datatypes known from KNX Classic. I.e., further data types or data object
 1318 structures may be defined that are used by features that may apply only to KNX IoT. An example of doing so may be modeling data
 1319 for trend logs.

1320 2.5.13.2 Simple Datatypes

1321 **Table 36 – Simple datatypes and CBOR representation**

| KNX data type | CBOR Type | JSON Type ^a | Notes |
|---------------|-------------|------------------------|---|
| B1 | bool | boolean | |
| A8 | text string | string | UTF-8 representation, ASCII is identical, ISO-8859-1 needs conversion to UTF8 |

| KNX data type | CBOR Type | JSON Type ^a | Notes |
|--|---------------------|------------------------|---|
| U8 | unsigned | integer | |
| V8 | negative / unsigned | integer | |
| U16 | unsigned | integer | |
| V16 | negative / unsigned | integer | GET and PUT to Parameter, and Diagnostic Properties containing a temperature value are mapped to CBOR float and JSON Number. |
| F16 | float | number | F16 is incompatible with CBOR 16-bit float, thus using 32-bit float. IEEE754 encodes with 1-bit sign, 5-bit exponent with bias 15 [-14,15] and 10-bit significant - with 11-bit precision under the assumption of a leading 1 if the exponent is not 0 (see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Half-precision_floating-point_format). KNX F16 encodes 12-bit of mantissa in 2 complement representation with a 4-bit exponent [0-15] and an assumed precision of 0.01. this leads to a range from [671088.64, 670670,96]. The encoding is different and leads to different ranges. |
| U32 | unsigned | integer | |
| V32 | negative / unsigned | integer | |
| F32 | float | number | CBOR has IEEE754 style floats - these match with the KNX 32-bit float definition. |
| A112 | text string | string | Conversion to UTF-8 representation needed, ASCII is valid, ISO-8859-1 needs conversion to UTF8. Max length is 14 characters - no trailing 00 are encoded. |
| N2, N3, N5, N6, N8 | unsigned | integer | If the numeric value is less than 24, 1 byte is sufficient. |
| A[n] | text string | string | Conversion to UTF-8 representation is needed if not UTF8 already. The length is dynamic - no trailing 00 as EOL are encoded. |
| V64 | negative / unsigned | integer | |
| ^a JSON can be basic types (integer, boolean, ...), objects, or arrays. Objects "{}" are unordered and need to be populated with key:value pairs. Note: RFC8259 specifies <i>number</i> as the only numeric value type. However, JSON schema defines <i>integer</i> as a separate value type. | | | |

1322

1323 2.5.13.3 Complex Datatypes

1324 KNX complex datatypes are modeled as an array of aggregated simple CBOR/JSON datatypes.

1325 KNX-structured DPTs are mapped to CBOR/JSON datatypes by the following rules:

- 1326 • represent singular fields of the KNX datatype (DPT) with their simple datatype (acc. 2.5.13.2
- 1327 "Simple Datatypes") and concatenate them to CBOR/JSON arrays
- 1328 • use next larger, simple data types for length-optimized fields of KNX data types, to map them to
- 1329 CBOR/JSON simple data types (e.g., U3 → U8 → unsigned/number)
- 1330 • reserved KNX data type / DPT fields SHALL be omitted - in most cases, the modeling by the
- 1331 next larger data type allows for extension

1332 Table 37 lists complex datatypes and the defined CBOR representation.

1333

Table 37 – Complex datatypes and CBOR representation

| KNX data type | CBOR Type | JSON Type ^a | Notes |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|---|
| B2 | [bool, bool] | [bool, bool] | |
| B1U3 | [bool, unsigned] | [bool, number] | |
| B5N3 | [[bool*], unsigned] | [[bool*], integer] | 6.020 DPT_Status_Mode3 |
| N3U5r2U6r2U6 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer, integer, integer] | 10.001 DPT_TimeOfDay |
| r3U5r4U4r1U7 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer, integer] | 11.001 DPT_Date |
| U4U4U4U4U4U4B4N4 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned, unsigned, unsigned, unsigned, [bool*4], unsigned] | [integer, integer, integer, integer, integer, integer, [bool*4], integer] | 15.000 DPT_Access_Data |
| r2U6 | unsigned | integer | 17.001 DPT_SceneNumber |
| B1r1U6 | [bool, unsigned] | [bool, integer] | 18.001 DPT_SceneControl |
| U8[r4U4][r3U5][U3U5]-[r2U6][r2U6]B16 | [unsigned*7, [bool*9]] | [integer*7, [bool*9]] | 19.001 DPT_DateTime: the ending B16 of the DPT is encoded from left to right and ends with seven (7) padding "zeros", i.e., only the nine (9) leading bits provide relevant information |
| B8 | [bool*] | [bool*] | |
| B16 | [bool*] | [bool*] | |
| U4U4 | [unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer] | |
| r1b1U6 | [bool, unsigned] | [bool, integer] | |
| B32 | [bool*] | [bool*] | |
| B24 | [bool*] | [bool*] | |
| U16N8 | [unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer] | |
| U8B8 | [unsigned, [bool*]] | [integer, [bool*]] | |
| V16B8 | [negative / unsigned, [bool*]] | [integer, [bool*]] | |
| V16B16 | [negative / unsigned, [bool*]] | [integer, [bool*]] | |
| U8N8 | [unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer] | |

| KNX data type | CBOR Type | JSON Type ^a | Notes |
|---------------|--|--|-------|
| V16V16V16 | [negative / unsigned, negative / unsigned, negative / unsigned] | [integer*3] | |
| V16V16V16V16 | [negative / unsigned, negative / unsigned, negative / unsigned, negative / unsigned] | [integer*4] | |
| V16U8B8 | [negative / unsigned, unsigned, [bool*]] | [integer, integer, [bool*]] | |
| V16U8B16 | [negative / unsigned, unsigned, [bool*]] | [integer, integer, [bool*]] | |
| U16U8N8B8 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned, [bool*]] | [integer, integer, integer, [bool*]] | |
| U5U5U6 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned] | [integer*3] | |
| U8N8N8N8B8B8 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned, unsigned, [bool*], [bool*]] | [integer, integer, integer, integer, [bool*], [bool*]] | |
| U16V16 | [unsigned, negative / unsigned] | [integer, integer] | |
| N16U32 | [unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer] | |
| F16F16F16 | [float, float, float] | [number, number, number] | |
| V8N8N8 | [negative / unsigned, unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer, integer] | |
| V16V16N8N8 | [negative / unsigned, negative / unsigned, unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer, integer, integer] | |
| U16U8 | [unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer] | |

| KNX data type | CBOR Type | JSON Type ^a | Notes |
|---|--|--------------------------------------|-------|
| U16U32U8N8 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer, integer, integer] | |
| A8A8A8A8 | text string | string | |
| U8U8U8 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer, integer] | |
| A8A8 | text string | string | |
| ^a JSON can be basic types, objects (maps), or arrays. Maps "{}" are unordered and have to be populated with key:value pairs. Note: RFC8259 specifies <i>number</i> as the only numeric value type. However, JSON schema defines <i>integer</i> as separate value types. | | | |

1334

1335 **2.5.13.4 KNX IoT Datatype Extensions**

1336 Table 38 lists datatypes that do not exist in KNX Classic and have been introduced for KNX IoT.

1337 **Table 38 – Datatype Extension CBOR representation**

| KNX Data Type | CBOR Type | JSON Type | Name | Notes |
|---------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|--|
| O[16] | byte string | string | DPT_ipv6 | The IPv6 address data type octet string SHALL correspond to the total 16 octets according to [RFC4291] in network byte order. Example: IPv6 Address: 2001:db8:3::6cd9:8ad2:8e88:1f68 -> Octet string: h'20010db8000300006cd98ad28e881f68' |
| U16U16U8 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned] | [integer, integer, integer] | DPT_programVersion | Program Version SHALL be formatted as follows (see also [10]): [<Manufacturer ID>, <Device Type>, <Application Program Version>] |

1338

1339 2.6 Runtime Interworking

1340 2.6.1 Discovery

1341 2.6.1.1 Introduction

1342 A KNX IoT device supports different discovery features that a client can use to learn about a KNX IoT
1343 device, for example, as a part of the device bootstrapping and configuration process (see clause 2.4).
1344 KNX IoT defines a DNS-based service discovery (DNS-SD) for IP address resolution in combination
1345 with a semantic resource discovery (incl. semantic annotations) based on CoAP. The device discovery is
1346 used within KNX IoT for the following purposes:

- 1347 • Discover new device: MaC discovers new devices on the network. The pre-requisite is that
1348 devices have an IP address but no security configuration or *KNX Individual Address*.
- 1349 • Discover commissioned device: A client discovers a commissioned KNX IoT device with at least
1350 security and a *KNX Individual Address* configured.
- 1351 • Device-initiated MaC notification: The device initiates the MaC to start the commissioning
1352 procedure (*Programming Mode* enabled).

1353 NOTE 4 This version of the KNX IoT Point API specification does not define the Device initiated commissioning.

1354 2.6.1.2 Device Discovery with DNS-SD

1355 2.6.1.2.1 Motivation

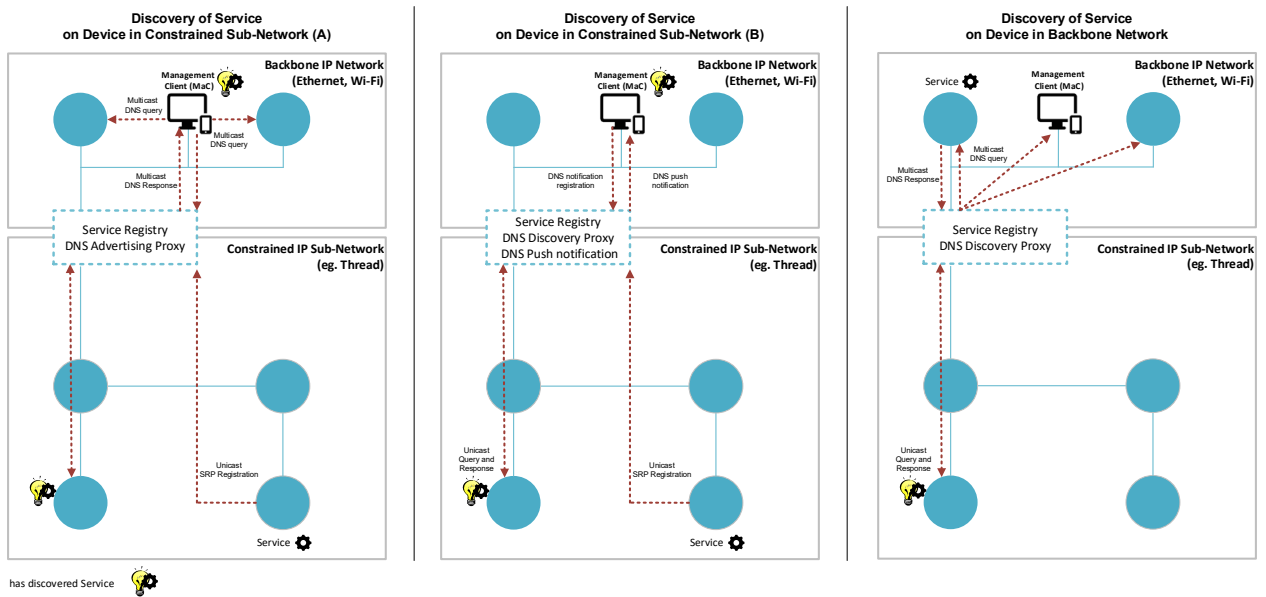
1356 In constrained networks (e.g., Thread), multicast SHOULD be avoided since this can lead to uncontrolled
1357 responses or congestion issues in the constrained network. In addition, multicast messages need cache
1358 memory on routers with sleepy end nodes, which may lead to loss of packets, for example, if the cache is
1359 full.

1360 Therefore, a KNX IoT device SHALL provide DNS Service Discovery (DNS-SD) [RFC6763] services to
1361 be discovered. Devices in a subsystem, for example, in a constrained network (e.g., Thread), MAY
1362 support this functionality by a DNS-SD Discovery Proxy [RFC8766]. Hence, a KNX IoT client can
1363 assume that (sleepy and non-sleepy) devices are always discoverable.

1364 A client MAY perform a short-lived query using unicast DNS over UDP to the DNS-SD Discovery
1365 Proxy. If supported by the DNS-SD Discovery Proxy, clients MAY use DNS Push Notifications
1366 [RFC8765] with DNS Stateful Operations [RFC 8490] for long-lived queries to reduce expensive polling.

1367 The KNX IoT device itself or a device discovery proxy SHALL advertise the device endpoint (service
1368 name) through a multicast Domain Name System (mDNS) [RFC6762]. KNX IoT devices in a subsystem
1369 with a DNS-SD Discovery Proxy, for example, a Thread network, SHALL support the DNS-SD Service
1370 Registration Protocol (SRP) [<https://tools.ietf.org/html/draft-ietf-dnssd-srp>] and implement an SRP-client.
1371 The SRP client registers the KNX IoT service name at the DNS-SD discovery proxy. A device discovers
1372 or becomes discoverable via DNS-SD discovery proxy in the local multicast scope and beyond without
1373 using multicast in the constrained network. Figure 16 illustrates such behavior for use cases (A) and (B).

1374 The MaC MAY use mDNS in networks not providing any additional DNS services or for the initial
1375 discovery of better performing DNS services (see Figure 16, use case (A)). A MaC in larger networks
1376 with, e.g., a discovery proxy SHOULD use DNS Push Notifications [RFC8765] with DNS Stateful
1377 Operations [RFC8490] for improved user experience (see Figure 16, use case (B)). Also, constrained
1378 KNX IoT devices needing to discover devices MAY implement DNS Push for interaction with the DNS
1379 Discovery Proxy (see Figure 16, use case (C)).



1380

1381 (A) Service Registry Protocol (SRP) and DNS Advertising Proxy (ADVPROXY) for legacy mDNS support

1382 (B) Service Registry Protocol, DNS Discovery Proxy, and DNS Push.

1383 (C) Examples of Constrained KNX IoT devices discovering a service in the backbone IP network.

1384 **Figure 16 - Bidirectional DNS Service Discovery for KNX IoT device discovery**

1385 As described in [RFC6762], mDNS SHALL use UDP port 5353 with the multicast IP address FF02::FB
1386 for IPv6.

1387 For standardizing the DNS-based discovery, a KNX IoT device SHALL adhere to the following rules:

- 1388 1. The KNX IoT device or a DNS-SD proxy (e.g., Thread Border Router) SHALL implement an
1389 mDNS client providing its IP address in a resource record of type AAAA for IPv6 [RFC3596]
1390 and MAY provide the IP address in a resource record type A for IPv4 [RFC1035] if IPv4 is
1391 supported on the device (e.g., KNX IoT Router).
- 1392 2. The KNX IoT device or the DNS-SD proxy SHALL support direct communication over at least
1393 one port. The name and port are propagated using the mDNS-SD protocol as defined in
1394 [RFC6763].
- 1395 3. The DNS-SD service type [RFC6335] is "_knx._udp". The communication port can be selected
1396 without limitations. The service domain is ".local" for mDNS (default) or as configured by the
1397 DNS Discovery Proxy for unicast DNS from corresponding subnets [RFC8766, clause 5.1]. The
1398 target host name, required in addition to the instance name (see clause 2.6.1.2.2 "DNS-SD
1399 Services"), is the *KNX Serial Number* encoded as fixed-length UTF-8 text in lowercase letters,
1400 e.g., "001caff1234.knx.local". If the device performs address randomization for privacy
1401 protection, the target host name updates accordingly.
- 1402 4. Communication between different subnets is considered to be part of the infrastructure
1403 installation for IP communication. mDNS can offer proxy information that offers access to other
1404 subnets IF the corresponding routes have been added AND the DHCP server has offered the
1405 corresponding gateway.

1406 NOTE 5 RFC6335: "The service name "_knx._udp" will be registered with IANA": <http://www.iana.org/assignments/port-numbers>

1407 2.6.1.2.2 DNS-SD Services

1408 The following standard DNS resource records represent a KNX IoT device in DNS-SD. KNX IoT uses
1409 standard DNS-SD Service Discovery according to [RFC6763], and no modifications are required.
1410 Irrelevant parts of the corresponding DNS resource records are omitted here for clarity.

1411 The "Service" indicates the KNX IoT device DNS-SD service type or subtype. The "Domain" (e.g., local)
 1412 is the DNS domain where the service type is present. The "Domain" is typically used to limit the resource
 1413 records returned in a DNS query. The domain is independent of the domain name of the host of the DNS-
 1414 SD service instance. The domains to scan for KNX devices MAY be discovered through reading DNS-
 1415 SD defined resource records. The hostname identifies the service and is a readable name and MAY be
 1416 determined locally but SHALL be unique among all instances of this service as defined in clause
 1417 2.6.1.2.3. For allowed characters, see [RFC6763], clause 4.1.1.

1418 A KNX IoT device SHALL advertise DNS AAAA records since KNX IoT uses IPv6 communication. A
 1419 KNX IoT device SHALL publish all AAAA records for all IPv6 addresses that are accepted for
 1420 commissioning or runtime communication.

1421 A KNX IoT device MAY advertise additional TXT records (see clause 2.6.1.2.4).

1422 As defined in [RFC1035], PTR Resource Records are used for enumerating the KNX IoT device DNS-
 1423 SD service instances. A KNX IoT device SHALL advertise the following service subtypes with the *KNX*
 1424 *Serial Number* as the service name (ASCII hexadecimal string in lowercase letters) for the corresponding
 1425 service instance:

- 1426 • `_ {serialnumber}`: Contains the *KNX Serial Number* as ASCII hexadecimal string in lowercase
 1427 letters.
- 1428 • `_ia{installationid}-{ia}`: MaC configured *KNX Individual Address* concatenated with the KNX
 1429 Installation ID as ASCII hexadecimal string in lowercase letters (see clause 2.6.1.2.3).
- 1430 • `_pm`: The device advertises this subtype only in *Programming Mode* (see clause 2.5.3.9).
- 1431 • `_m{manufacturer-specific-service}`: Manufacturer-specific subtypes concatenated with a
 1432 manufacturer-defined service name.

1433 EXAMPLE 01 The example below shows a commissioned KNX IoT device in programming mode:

```

1434 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local. PTR 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local.
1435 _ia33a3-20a._sub._knx._udp.local. PTR 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local.
1436 _pm._sub._knx._udp.local. PTR 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local.
1437 _mmyapi._sub._knx._udp.local. PTR 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local.
1438 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local. SRV 0 0 5683 {hostname}.local.
1439 {hostname}.local. AAAA fe80::f244:126f:6772:4a60
  
```

1440 2.6.1.2.3 Commissioning and Operational Discovery

1441 The naming convention for the DNS-SD `{hostname}` of a KNX IoT device in default configuration state
 1442 SHALL be in the format `knx-{serialnumber}.local`. The *KNX Serial Number* SHALL be a valid DNS
 1443 name as an ASCII hexadecimal string in lowercase letters, e.g., "knx-001caffe1234.local". DNS-SD will
 1444 detect a name conflict if the hostname is not unique. The device has to generate an alternative instance
 1445 name according to [RFC6762] and the Service Registration Protocol [SRP]. It is RECOMMENDED to
 1446 increment a number separated by a dash at the end of the hostname (e.g., `knx-001caffe1234-1.local`) in
 1447 case of a name conflict. This name convention allows the discovery of a new device without the
 1448 additional configuration of standard DNS servers. The hostname MAY change later in a local
 1449 deployment.

1450 A KNX IoT device in *Programming Mode* (see clause 2.5.3.9) that is waiting for commissioning SHALL
 1451 advertise "`_pm`" as a subtype of the service type to allow for filtered responses
 1452 (`_pm._sub._knx._udp.local`). A manufacturer-specific string MAY be provided as an additional subtype.

1453 The following example shows a command-line example to create an mDNS advertisement using the
 1454 `avahi-utils` Linux package and the subsequent discovery and IP address resolution. The device has a
 1455 factory default configuration setting for the *KNX Individual Address* (e.g., 0).

Discovery example of a device in *Programming Mode*.

```
avahi-publish --host=knx-001caffe1234.local -s --subtype=_001caffe1234._sub._knx._udp --
subtype=_pm._sub._knx._udp --subtype=_ia-0._sub._knx._udp 001caffe1234 _knx._udp 5683
```

```
avahi-browse -rt _pm._sub._knx._udp
= IPv6 001caffe1234
  hostname = [knx-001caffe1234.local]
  address = [fd11:2222:33a3:0001:6cd9:8ad2:8e88:1f68]
  port = [5683]
```

- 1456
1457 For operational discovery, after the MaC has configured a *KNX Individual Address* and operational
1458 credentials (LDevID or OSCORE) etc., the DNS-SD service type of the operational KNX IoT device
1459 SHALL comprise the KNX Installation ID and the configured *KNX Individual Address* separated by a
1460 hyphen ("-"), encoded as ASCII hexadecimal string of 12 respectively 16 characters, e.g., _ia33a3-
1461 20a.knx.local, the target host name remains unchanged. Leading zeros in the KNX Installation ID and
1462 *KNX Individual Address* SHALL be omitted (e.g., 0x00000033a3 = _ia33a3-20a.knx.local).
- 1463 During normal operation, a KNX IoT device SHALL advertise both the *KNX Serial Number* and the *KNX*
1464 *Individual Address* service type.
- 1465 The following command-line example shows a DNS-SD advertisement using the avahi-utils Linux
1466 package and the subsequent discovery and IP address resolving.

Discovery example with *KNX Serial Number*.

```
avahi-publish --host=knx-001caffe1234.local -s --subtype=_001caffe1234._sub._knx._udp 001caffe1234
_knx._udp 5683
```

```
avahi-browse -r _001caffe1234._sub._knx._udp
= IPv6 001caffe1234._sub._knx._udp
  hostname = [knx-001caffe1234.local]
  address = [fd11:2222:33a3:0001:6cd9:8ad2:8e88:1f68]
  port = [5683]
```

- 1467
- 1468 2.6.1.2.4 TXT Records
- 1469 TXT records are multi-purpose text-based key/value pairs that MAY be contained in a DNS-SD TXT
1470 record. Client devices SHALL silently ignore TXT records if they do not use the information.
- 1471 2.6.1.2.4.1 Sleep Period Record "SP"
- 1472 A sleepy KNX IoT device SHALL advertise the "SP" TXT record. The "SP" TXT record announces how
1473 long in milliseconds a sleepy KNX IoT device maybe not reachable. The "SP" value SHALL NOT
1474 exceed 1 hour (3'600'000 milliseconds).
- 1475 EXAMPLE 02 The example below shows a sleepy KNX IoT device with 3 min. sleep periods:
- 1476 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local. PTR 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local.
1477 _ia33a3-20a._sub._knx._udp.local. PTR 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local.
1478 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local. TXT "SP=3000"
1479 001caffe1234._knx._udp.local. SRV 0 0 5683 {hostname}.local.
1480 {hostname}.local. AAAA fe80::f244:126f:6772:4a60
- 1481

1482 2.6.1.3 Resource Discovery with CoAP

1483 2.6.1.3.1 Introduction

1484 Multicast resource discovery in CoAP (CoRE) is accomplished by using the `"/.well-known/core"` resource
1485 URI that returns a list of links about resources hosted by that server that matches filter attributes.

1486 Multicast Resource Discovery is useful if a client needs to locate a resource within a limited scope, and
1487 that scope supports IP multicast. To limit the number and size of responses, a query string with known
1488 attributes (e.g., `rt`) is RECOMMENDED. Typically, a resource would be discovered based on its
1489 Resource Type (`rt`) along with possible application-specific attributes.

1490 The Resource Type `"rt"` attribute is an opaque string used to assign an application-specific semantic type
1491 to a resource. In the case of a room temperature sensor (RTS) resource, this could be, e.g., an application-
1492 specific semantic type like URI referencing a specific concept in the "KNX Information Model" [03],
1493 such as, `"urn:knx:dpa.352.51"` (KNX Datapoint Annotation) or `"urn:knx:fb.321"` (*KNX Functional Block*).
1494 Multiple Resource Types may be included in the value of this parameter, each separated by a space. The
1495 maximum length of this parameter is 63 octets.

1496 This clause explains the basic mechanisms, query formats, and other requirements that are common over
1497 all the discovery operations. More details per discovery type are given in later clauses. Note that all
1498 discovery types re-use the same generic mechanism of Link Format querying for attribute values,
1499 simplifying a constrained implementation.

1500 2.6.1.3.2 Basic Query Format

1501 A KNX IoT device SHALL support the query filtering even if this is designated as optional in [RFC7252]
1502 and [RFC6690]. The hostname is typically an IPv6 [RFC2460] literal between square brackets, either
1503 unicast address or multicast address. For example: `[ff03::fd]`. The below CoAP request format is used to
1504 do a one-attribute query in general:

```
1505 GET coap://hostname/.well-known/core?attribute=value
```

1506 2.6.1.3.3 Multiple Query-Attributes Format

1507 Attributes MAY appear in any order; this order has no specific significance. Allowing multiple attributes
1508 extends [RFC6690], allowing only one attribute query. All the query attributes are logically AND-ed to
1509 provide the query result. Multiple query attributes MAY be applied for unicast and multicast queries, and
1510 the number of attributes for query is not limited. A KNX IoT device MAY impose limits on the number
1511 of query attributes to reduce complexity.

```
1512 GET coap://hostname/.well-known/core?attribute=value&attr2=val2
```

1513 2.6.1.3.4 Wildcard Usage and Hierarchy

1514 Also, note that per [RFC6690], the `"*"`-character can be used as the wildcard in any query attribute value.
1515 *partialValue* is a partial value prefix string, which is used to search for multiple values that start with the
1516 string *partialValue* and end with the wildcard character `"*"`.

```
1517 GET coap://hostname/.well-known/core?attribute=partialValue*
```

1518 2.6.1.3.5 Basic Response Format

1519 A successful response to a query SHALL consist of a unicast 2.05 response with CoRE Link Format
1520 [RFC6690] payload containing the query result. The CoAP Token in the response SHALL be the same as
1521 the request Token. The exact attributes returned MAY depend on the query parameters used. If not
1522 explicitly specified, supporting concatenated query parameters is OPTIONAL. The `</path>` returned
1523 depends on the query type, i.e., if and what query parameters were given with the query request. The
1524 `</path>` returned is given by the device, i.e., it is device- and manufacturer specific. Note that secured,
1525 OSCORE, or `coaps://` scheme links MAY be returned, although not shown in the following example.

1526 In addition to the `</path>`, the response SHALL contain the Resource Type `"rt"` and Content-Type `"ct"` if
1527 the corresponding metadata are defined for the Point.

Discovery response

```
2.05 Content (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))
</path>; attr=value; attr2=value2,
<other link 1>,
<other link 2>
```

1528

1529 2.6.1.3.6 Query-Attributes

1530 2.6.1.3.6.1 Endpoint Name "ep"

1531 Endpoint Name provides a unique identifier within a defined domain. A domain might be a single
 1532 installation of a site or the entire world (global). The value of the Endpoint Name attribute SHALL be a
 1533 unique device identifier (e.g., *KNX Serial Number*). The response SHALL contain the requested ep
 1534 identifier (*KNX Serial Number* and the *KNX Individual Address*) and the base path (e.g., $\langle \rangle$ or $\langle /api \rangle$)
 1535 for KNX IoT resources. A KNX IoT device SHALL ignore a multicast query request for "ep" if the
 1536 queried Endpoint Name does not match its own or if the query request contains more than one "ep"
 1537 attribute. A KNX IoT device SHALL accept and respond to a discovery request if its configured *KNX*
 1538 *Individual Address* or built-in *KNX Serial Number* matches the *KNX Serial Number* or *KNX Individual*
 1539 *Address* received with the discovery request (see also 2.4.2).

CoAP client discovers a device with a particular device identifier (e.g., *KNX Serial Number* from QR code scan) in a network.**REQ:**

```
GET coap://{ipv6-multicast}/.well-known/core?ep=knx://sn.1caffe1234
```

RES:

```
2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))
```

Payload:

```
<>;ep="knx://sn.1caffe1234 knx://ia.33a3.20a"
```

1540

1541 With the above-shown discovery request, a MaC will get the KNX IoT device's IP (unicast) address that
 1542 is not part of the CoAP response payload but contained in the IP response frame. Using the returned IP
 1543 address, the MaC may then do further (unicast) discovery or other unicast actions (e.g., device
 1544 configuration)

1545 2.6.1.3.6.2 Programming Mode "if.pm"

1546 Suppose the *Programming Mode* is active (see clause 2.5.3.9), a KNX IoT device SHALL accept and
 1547 respond to the discovery request to /.well-known/core and with query attribute if=urn:knx:if.pm, with its
 1548 *KNX Serial Number* and the $\langle KNX Individual Address \rangle$ in the response's ep attribute
 1549 (ep="knx://sn. $\langle KNX Serial Number \rangle$ knx://ia. $\langle KNX Installation ID \rangle$. $\langle KNX Individual Address \rangle$ ").

1550 If the *Programming Mode* is used to identify the device, then the MaC sends a multicast request to the
 1551 device, which returns the *KNX Serial Number* with its device IP address. Using the returned IP address,
 1552 the MaC can set, for example, the *KNX Individual Address* of the device in a subsequent step.

1553 Sleepy KNX IoT devices in *Programming Mode* SHALL reply to requests after a maximum of 2 seconds
 1554 (default CoAP timeout) to have a reasonable reaction time on the MaC.

1555 If the device is not in *Programming Mode*, then a KNX IoT device SHALL return with CoAP response
 1556 code "4.04 Not Found" with an empty payload (unicast request) or ignore the multicast query request.

Discover devices that are in *Programming Mode*.**REQ:**

GET coap://[FF03::FD]/.well-known/core?if=urn:knx:if.pm

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))

Payload:

<>;ep="knx://sn.1caffe1234 knx://ia.33a3.20a"

1557

1558 2.6.1.3.6.3 Interface Description "if"

1559 An interface description describes a generic CoAP resource to interact with a Point or a set of Points. The
 1560 interface provides a view of organized Points. The interface description "if" attribute is an opaque string
 1561 indicating a specific interface definition defined in clause 2.5.3, "Interface Types (if)". The "if" column
 1562 defines the interface description (if=) attribute value to be used in the CoRE Link Format for a resource
 1563 conforming to that interface.

1564 The "urn:knx" namespace identifier SHALL be omitted in the response to reduce payload (see clause
 1565 1.4.5, "Uniform Resource Name") since the request filter has already been applied to "urn:knx".

CoAP client discovers all (wildcard) output points on a specific device.**REQ:**

GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/core?if=urn:knx:if.o

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))

Payload:

</point-path-example>;rt=":dpa.352.55";if=":if.o";ct=50

1566

1567 The "if" attribute MAY be used with a query attribute to read a value from a device in a specified device
 1568 state such as the *Programming Mode* (see clause 2.6.1.3.6.2).

1569 A MaC MAY use multicast or unicast requests to test the destination device with a specific *KNX Serial*
 1570 *Number* if the KNX IoT device is currently in *Programming Mode*.

1571 A KNX IoT device SHALL support the concatenation of "ep=knx://sn.{*KNX Serial Number*}" and
 1572 "if=urn:knx:if.pm" query parameters. The response SHALL contain the *KNX Serial Number* and the if all
 1573 query parameters match.

CoAP client discovers (multicast) a device in *Programming Mode* (pm).**REQ:**

GET coap://[FF03::FD]/.well-known/core?ep=knx://sn.*&if=urn:knx:if.pm

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))

Payload:

<>;ep="knx://sn.1caffe1234 knx://ia.33a3.20a"

1574

1575 The above example shows the combination of query attributes `ep=knx://sn.*&if=urn:knx:if.pm` in a
 1576 multicast discovery request. The attribute `if=urn:knx:if.pm` here limits the number of responses to only
 1577 those resources (devices) that have their *Programming Mode* enabled. Using query attribute `ep=knx://sn.*`
 1578 only, i.e., wildcard on the serial number `sn`, would result in responses from all devices.

1579 NOTE 6 Multiple devices could respond with their `ep` in the payload, i.e., if more than one device is present with their
 1580 *Programming Mode* enabled.

1581 2.6.1.3.6.4 Resource Type "rt"

1582 A discovery client MAY use the resource type represented by the "rt" attribute (see [RFC6690] clause
 1583 3.1) for selected CoAP resources. Every discoverable resource SHALL have an "rt" attribute associated.
 1584 The resource type value for a resource SHALL contain "urn:knx:" and is to be interpreted as an identifier
 1585 for the type of the resource.

1586 The "rt" attribute value is used to filter a discovery request based on a *Functional Block* type ID
 1587 (e.g., `urn:knx:fb.321`) or a Datapoint Annotation (e.g., `urn:knx:dpa.321.51`). The "rt" member MAY
 1588 contain a list of different types representing semantic information. The syntax of the value of this attribute
 1589 is: `rt={type}`.

1590 A Datapoint Annotation combines Object Type (*Functional Block* type ID) and Property Identifier, as
 1591 described in KNX standard Volume 7. A Point MAY have one or many Datapoint Annotations; for
 1592 example, an "if.i" (input interface) can have bindings to several "if.o" Points (output interface). Hence, the
 1593 Datapoint Annotation is either the Point Object Type and Property ID (DP Address) or possible Point
 1594 bindings (e.g., LTE InfoReport input). Datapoint Annotations for "if.i" and "if.o" are described in KNX
 1595 standard Volume 7 in the "LTE-Mode" datapoint description (see Communication – DP Address).

1596 In the following example, a client device wants to discover Points with a specific Datapoint Annotation
 1597 on a server device. If the server device hosts such Points, then the server device SHALL reply with a list
 1598 containing all resources, including access path, resource type, and content type. In addition, the response
 1599 SHALL at least contain Points with the interface type "if.o" or "if.i" and "if.p" in case of an unassigned
 1600 (peripheral) *Group Address* configuration Point.

1601 The "urn:knx" namespace identifier SHALL be omitted in the response to reduce payload (see clause
 1602 1.4.5, "Uniform Resource Name") since the request filter has already been applied to "urn:knx".

CoAP client discovers all (wildcard) Heat Valve Actuator (Functional Block 352) points on a specific device.

REQ:

```
GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/core?rt=urn:knx:dpa.352*
```

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))

Payload:

```
</point-path-example1>;rt=":dpa.352.51";if=":if.i";ct=50 60,  
</point-path-example2>;rt=":dpa.352.55";if=":if.o";ct=50 60
```

1603

1604 2.6.1.3.6.5 Sector "d"

1605 In a Resource Directory [RD] context, a sector is a logical grouping of resources. The abbreviation "d" is
 1606 used for the sector in query parameters for compatibility with deployed implementations. The sector
 1607 identifier "d" is used to discover resources reachable through a KNX *Group Address*. Therefore, the value
 1608 of "d" represents a KNX *Group Address*. The syntax for a KNX *Group Address* is `d=urn:knx:g.{group-
 1609 type}.{group-address}`. This specification defines "s" as `{group-type}` for S-Mode *Group Address* and "p"
 1610 for unassigned (peripheral) tags as `{group-type}` (see KNX standard Volume 10/1 clause 5.3). However,
 1611 other `{group-types}` MAY be added in the future.

1612 The wildcard character ("*") is neither allowed in the <group-type> nor in the <group-address> field
 1613 since this can result in large responses. The KNX IoT device SHALL return a response code of "4.00 Bad
 1614 Request" if the request contains a wildcard character ("*") in a KNX *Group Address* discovery query.

1615 The "urn:knx" namespace identifier SHALL be omitted in the response to reduce payload since the
 1616 request filter has already been applied to "urn:knx".

CoAP client discovers points that belong to a specific *Group Address* (S-Mode) on a specific device.

REQ:

GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/core?d=urn:knx:g.s.1234

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))

Payload:

</point-path-example>;rt=":dpa.352.51";ct=60

1617
 1618 A KNX IoT device SHALL support the concatenation of query parameters with resource type "rt", but
 1619 only for "dpa" prefixed attributes (Datapoint Annotation), and the sector type "d" with {group-type} "p".
 1620 The query attributes are logically AND-ed to provide the query result. This allows clients (e.g., controller
 1621 *Functional Block*) to find corresponding runtime interworking inputs or outputs of a particular Datapoint
 1622 Annotation. This discovery query is intended to be used in small ad hoc configurations, for example, in
 1623 combination with a push-mode-like binding.

1624 If "rt" and "d" are used in combination, then the wildcard character ("*") is neither allowed in "rt", nor in
 1625 the "d" query parameter. The KNX IoT device SHALL return a response code of "4.00 Bad Request" if
 1626 the request contains a wildcard character ("*").

CoAP client discovers (multicast) Points that belong to the peripheral *Group Address* = 1

REQ:

GET coap://[FF03::FD]/.well-known/core?rt=urn:knx:dpa.352.55&d=urn:knx:g.p.1

RES:

CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))

Payload:

</point-path-example>;rt=":dpa.352.55"; if=":if.o";ct=50 60

1627

1628 2.6.1.4 Linkage and Resolution

1629 Device resources MAY be identified by a Link Identifier and a relative path component. To identify a
 1630 specific resource, a Logical Resource Identifier (LRI) is used; this LRI can be generated as a unique ID
 1631 by the device. A Link Identifier is defined by the URI scheme: "knx".

1632 The following LRI example shows a reference to a KNX IoT device resource of a particular KNX device.
 1633 Leading zeros in the *KNX Serial Number*, KNX Installation ID, and *KNX Individual Address* SHALL be
 1634 omitted.

- 1635 • *KNX Serial Number* (ASCII hexadecimal lowercase letters): knx://sn.1caffe1234/{point-path}.
- 1636 • *KNX Individual Address* (ASCII hexadecimal lowercase letters): knx://ia.33a3.20a/{point-path}.

1637 The same ID SHALL be used as endpoint name (ep) to discover the device by clients in case the IP
 1638 address has changed.

1639 2.6.2 Device IP Address

1640 2.6.2.1 Requirements

1641 A single network MAY consist of a bridged Ethernet or Wi-Fi network, and all KNX IoT devices belong
 1642 to the same IPv6 multicast domain. In this case, a link-local IPv6 addressing (LLA) is sufficient. A larger
 1643 OT (Operational Technology) network usually contains stub networks. Stub networks, like a Thread
 1644 network, require routable IPv6 addresses to communicate across networks, such as a unique-local
 1645 identifier (ULA).

1646 The Thread network uses an On-mesh prefix for link-local communication, which corresponds with an
 1647 LLA prefix in a Wi-Fi or Ethernet network. A stub router (Border Router) connects the stub network with
 1648 an adjacent network. The stub router SHALL provide its routable prefix if the network does not provide a
 1649 routable prefix. A stub router SHOULD advertise routable prefixes on the adjacent network. A Thread
 1650 Border Router, for example, SHOULD advertise routable prefixes on adjacent networks with Router
 1651 Advertisements [RFC4861] with the Route Information Option [RFC4191].

1652 The KNX IoT device SHALL listen on configured CoAP ports (see Device Resource Object clause
 1653 2.5.6). The default CoAP port configuration SHALL be used for unicast and multicast as defined in
 1654 [RFC7252].

1655 All KNX IoT devices SHALL have an IPv6 address. KNX IoT devices will use the unique-local identifier
 1656 fd00::/8 according to [RFC4193] for communication within private networks (site or organization, but not
 1657 in the global IPv6 Internet). Furthermore, a KNX IoT device SHALL support the configuration of at least
 1658 three routable IPv6 addresses (e.g., KNX Fabric, KNX Installation, and Thread Domain prefix) in
 1659 addition to the link-local address. As for any IPv6 networking device, multiple IPv6 addresses may be
 1660 available. If available, the prefix having the unique-local identifier concatenated with a KNX Fabric ID
 1661 (see configuration property "dev/fid" in clause 2.5.6) yields the system Unique Local Address (ULA)
 1662 prefix that SHOULD be used to construct the default address for KNX IoT messages. For each KNX IoT
 1663 Fabric that wants to use KNX-specific ULA for the deployed system, the MaC either gets a network-
 1664 specific ULA configuration from the network administrator or generates a random, unique 40-bit KNX
 1665 Fabric ID representing the Global ID according to [RFC4193]. This procedure is part of the configuration
 1666 with a MaC and is not in the scope of this specification.

1667 The interface identifier of a KNX IoT device SHALL be 64 bits long. It MAY be constructed by various
 1668 methods [RFC4291, RFC7136, Thread Specification] but SHALL be persistent over reboots for the
 1669 operational phase of the device. It MAY also be created randomly and recreated during a device reset to
 1670 the default state. The device SHOULD implement some method of Duplicate Address Detection (DAD),
 1671 e.g., [RFC4429].

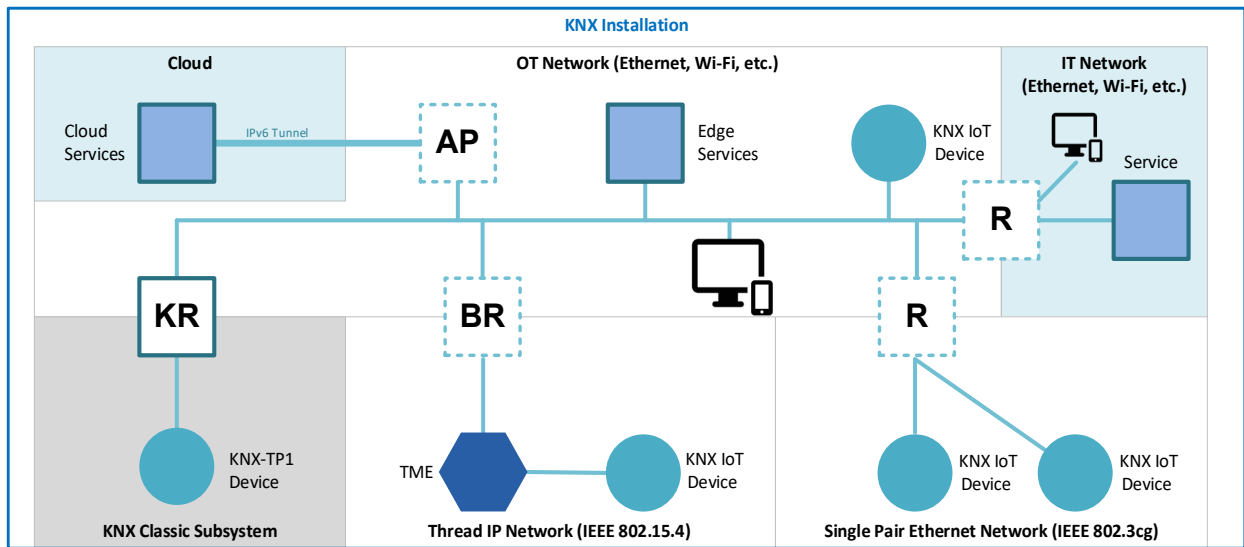
1672 Every IPv6 subnet, such as a Thread or Wi-Fi network, gets a separate 16-bit subnet ID. Subnet ID
 1673 "0000" is, by convention, reserved for administrative services. This results in the following IPv6 address
 1674 format for a KNX IoT device when using the ULA:

| ULA Routing Prefix /48 | | Subnet ID | Interface Identifier |
|------------------------|---------------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| Unique-Local | KNX Fabric ID / Global ID | | |
| fd | 11:2222:33a3: | 0001: | 6cd9:8ad2:8e88:1f68 |

1675 2.6.2.2 KNX Network Example

1676 The following KNX network example contains devices and services in different network segments. The
 1677 KNX Fabric ID and KNX Installation ID simplify the routing table configuration instead of "whitelisting"
 1678 each device individually. Hence the KNX Fabric ID and KNX Installation ID are part of the security zone
 1679 concept (see clause 3.1), and access is only possible among devices and services with the same ULA. In
 1680 addition, the KNX Fabric ID MAY be used to separate groups of devices within an OT network. For
 1681 example, devices that belong to a tenant (apartment) or trade (lighting, fire protection, HVAC system,
 1682 etc.) MAY have its IPv6 address range in larger buildings.

1683 The example also contains an IPv6 tunnel to a Cloud service via Access Point (AP). This tunnel, or rather
 1684 the service at the end of the tunnel, belongs to the KNX Fabric too. The same applies to services in an IT
 1685 network (office network). In both cases, routers block requests to devices not belonging to the KNX
 1686 Fabric.



AP: Access Point, BR: Border Router, KR: KNX IoT Router, R: IP Network Router, TME: Thread Mesh Extender

Figure 17 – KNX Network Example

1687

1688

1689 **2.6.3 Unicast Operation**

1690 **2.6.3.1 IPv6 Unicast Port Number**

1691 The default port number for KNX IoT unicast communication SHALL be 5683 (CoAP default port
 1692 number). It is RECOMMENDED not to change the default port for runtime communication (see 2.5.6,
 1693 "Device Object Resource (dev)").

1694 **2.6.3.2 Options**

1695 Table 39 lists the Options for a server KNX IoT device MANDATORY ("M", for mandatory), SHOULD
 1696 ("R", for recommended), or OPTIONAL ("O") support. The hyphen ("-") means not applicable, and the
 1697 "X" means the Option can be used but SHOULD NOT be used in the indicated context. All the Options
 1698 are specified in [RFC7252] except where noted otherwise in the "Notes" column. Any Option in a
 1699 confirmable request that is not recognized by a server where the option number has the "Critical" flag
 1700 [RFC7252] set SHALL lead to a "4.02 Bad Option" response code. These are the uneven Option
 1701 numbers. Option support for a client is not specified in detail. However, it SHALL support at least the
 1702 Options marked MANDATORY ("M") in the Server "In Response" column below.

1703

Table 39 – Unicast operation server requirements

| Opt Nr | Option Name | Server support for the Option | | Notes |
|--------|-------------|-------------------------------|-------------|---|
| | | In Request | In Response | |
| 1 | If-Match | O | - | |
| 3 | Uri-Host | O | - | Usually not included in a CoAP request; a Server SHALL respond 4.02 if it does not support multiple virtual servers per Clause 5.10.1 of [RFC7252]. |
| 4 | ETag | O | O | |

| Opt Nr | Option Name | Server support for the Option | | Notes |
|--------|----------------|-------------------------------|-------------|---|
| | | In Request | In Response | |
| 5 | If-None-Match | O | - | |
| 6 | Observe | O | - | [RFC8323] |
| 7 | Uri-Port | O | - | Normally not included in a CoAP request; a Server SHALL respond 4.02 if it does not support multiple virtual servers per [RFC7252] clause 5.10.1. |
| 8 | Location-Path | - | M | Typically used when resources are created using POST. |
| 9 | OSCORE | M | M | OSCORE application layer security [RFC8613] |
| 11 | Uri-Path | M | - | |
| 12 | Content-Format | M | M | Applicable for PUT and POST in requests and GET in the response. |
| 14 | Max-Age | - | O | By default, excluded in response. |
| 15 | Uri-Query | M | - | |
| 17 | Accept | M | - | Applicable for PUT and POST if payload returned. |
| 20 | Location-Query | - | O | |
| 23 | Block2 | O | O | [RFC7959] |
| 27 | Block1 | O | O | [RFC7959] |
| 28 | Size2 | O | O | [RFC7959] |
| 35 | Proxy-Uri | O | - | |
| 39 | Proxy-Scheme | O | - | |
| 60 | Size1 | O | R O | "R" for Clause 5.9.2.9 of [RFC7252] defined Size1 semantics for 4.13 response; "O" for [RFC7959] Size1 semantics. |
| 252 | Echo | M | M | [RFC9175] |
| 258 | No-Response | R | - | [RFC7967] |

1704

1705 **2.6.3.3 Response Codes**

1706 2.6.3.3.1 Overview

1707 Table 40 lists the response codes that the server KNX IoT device SHALL ("M", for MANDATORY) or
1708 MAY ("O", for optional) support. The "X" means SHOULD NOT use this response because there is a
1709 better alternative or no reason to use it. The usage rules for the code are given by [RFC7252] or the RFC
1710 listed in the "Notes" column, plus the "Requirements for Use" stated in this column, if any. The required
1711 support for a CoAP client is not specified in detail; however, a client SHALL at least be able to
1712 distinguish the basic CoAP response code classes 2.xx (success), 4.xx (client error), and 5.xx (server
1713 error).

1714 Using error messages that do not provide implementation details is important to avoid information
 1715 leakage. When a server encounters a problem, only standardized status codes of the 4.xx and 5.xx
 1716 range SHALL be used consistently with their intended semantics.

1717 A server MAY choose to stop processing as soon as a problem is encountered, or it MAY continue
 1718 processing and encounter multiple problems. For instance, a server might process multiple attributes and
 1719 then return multiple validation problems in a single response. When a server encounters multiple
 1720 problems for a single request, the most generally applicable error code SHALL be used in the response.

1721 In the case of multiple errors, the general priority of errors is manufacturer specific, and MAY differ
 1722 amongst KNX IoT devices. However, response code "4.01 Unauthorized" has the highest priority and
 1723 SHALL be used for clients that do not have valid authentication credentials (e.g. (D)TLS [X.509]
 1724 certificate and/or OSCORE pre-shared key).

1725 If no specific response code is applicable, "4.00 Bad Request" might be appropriate for 4.xx errors,
 1726 or "5.00 Internal Server Error" might be appropriate for 5.xx errors.

1727

Table 40 – Server response codes

| Resp. Code | Description | Support Level | Notes and Requirements for Use |
|------------|--------------------|---------------|--|
| 2.01 | Created | M | "Create" operation, e.g., of an item, is completed successfully; [RFC7252]. |
| 2.02 | Deleted | M | "Delete" operation is completed successfully; [RFC7252]. |
| 2.03 | Valid | O | Only used when ETag Option was in request. |
| 2.04 | Changed | M | "Write" operation is completed successfully; [RFC7252]. |
| 2.05 | Content | M | "Read", "Notification", or "Discover", etc. operation is completed successfully; [RFC7252]. |
| 2.31 | Continue | O | This code indicates that the transfer of this block of the request body was successful and that the server encourages sending further blocks; [RFC7959]. |
| 4.00 | Bad Request | M | The response means the server could not understand the request due to invalid syntax; [RFC7252]. |
| 4.01 | Unauthorized | M | Used if the client could not (yet) be properly authenticated to check if it is authorized to access this resource. The client SHOULD perform action(s) to authenticate itself before retrying the request. If a request results in several errors, then Unauthorized SHOULD have the highest priority. |
| 4.02 | Bad Option | M | Diagnostic payload SHALL be included and SHOULD start with the first unrecognized critical-option number as a 4-byte UTF-8 string. |
| 4.03 | Forbidden | M | Used if the client could be authenticated but does not have the authorization to access this resource (e.g., wrong access scope). The client SHOULD take action(s) to improve its authorization status before retrying this request. |
| 4.04 | Not Found | M | Server cannot find the requested resource; [RFC7252]. |
| 4.05 | Method Not Allowed | M | The request method (GET or PUT etc.) is known by the server but has been disabled and cannot be used; [RFC7252]. |

| Resp. Code | Description | Support Level | Notes and Requirements for Use |
|------------|----------------------------|---------------|--|
| 4.06 | Not Acceptable | M | This response is sent when the server, after performing content negotiation, doesn't find any content following the criteria given by the client; [RFC7252]. |
| 4.08 | Request Entity Incomplete | O | The code indicates one or more missing blocks. The server has not received the blocks of the request body that it needs to proceed; [RFC7959]. |
| 4.09 | Conflict | X | See [RFC8132], typically not expected to be supported. |
| 4.12 | Precondition Failed | O | If 4.12 not implemented, then 4.02 SHALL be returned if a conditional request [RFC7252] is made. |
| 4.13 | Request Entity Too Large | O | "O" as defined in [RFC7252] for request size only. |
| 4.15 | Unsupported Content-Format | M | The media format of the requested data is not supported by the server, so the server is rejecting the request; [RFC7252]. |
| 4.22 | Unprocessable Entity | X | See [RFC8132], typically not expected to be supported. |
| 4.29 | Too Many Requests | M | [RFC8516] |
| 5.00 | Internal Server Error | M | [RFC7252] |
| 5.01 | Not Implemented | X | [RFC7252] requires the use of 4.05 instead for all cases. |
| 5.02 | Bad Gateway | O | Only relevant for CoAP Proxy; [RFC7252]. |
| 5.03 | Service Unavailable | O | The server is not ready to handle the request. Common causes are a server that is down for maintenance or overloaded. The server SHALL return a Retry-After header indicating how long (delay in seconds) the client should wait before making a follow-up request; [RFC7252]. |
| 5.04 | Gateway Timeout | O | The request does not complete within a specified time. The request times out and returns a Gateway Timeout error. Only relevant for CoAP Proxy; [RFC7252]. |
| 5.05 | Proxying Not Supported | O | If proxying is not supported for any resource, a CoAP request with Proxy-Uri Option SHOULD trigger a 4.02 response instead of 5.05. |

1728

1729 2.6.3.3.2 Error Responses to Queries

1730 This clause applies to all unicast operations in the context of Discovery, i.e., unicast interactions on the
 1731 "well-known/core" resource. Error responses are generated when a unicast request is sent and an error
 1732 occurs in processing the request. The applicable response codes, including error responses, are defined in
 1733 [RFC7252] clause 12.1.2. Specifically, in the case where a query contains too many elements for the
 1734 responding server to handle is relevant for Discovery. This includes, for example:

- 1735 • Too many query parameters.
- 1736 • Too long strings in query parameters or other parts of the URI.
- 1737 • Too long URI in total.

1738 In such situations, the server SHOULD respond with a response code "4.13 Request Entity Too Large".
1739 This might indicate to the client that it SHOULD adapt its query before sending it again. It might happen
1740 that the response to a discovery request (holds for all requests) would be too large to construct or send for
1741 the server. Without a specific error code for this situation, the server could indicate this with an error
1742 response code "4.00 Bad Request" to indicate that the client might change /restrict the discovery query.

1743 Since discovery queries might lead to long answers, especially if filtering is not implemented fully, clients
1744 SHALL support the option of CoAP block-wise Transfers [RFC7959].

1745 An exception is, however, when the CoAP server is only temporarily occupied and will soon (within
1746 some seconds) be available to process larger queries. Then, the server SHOULD respond with the
1747 response code "5.03 Service Unavailable".

1748 2.6.3.3.3 Rate limiting

1749 KNX IoT devices SHALL rate-limit requests from clients that are sending excessive requests. This
1750 prevents battery-powered devices, for example, from being discharged. Errors in software or
1751 configurations in other parts of the system unintentionally cause many load-based denial-of-service
1752 incidents in systems.

1753 2.6.3.3.4 Block-wise Transfer

1754 KNX IoT devices (server) that do not support CoAP block-wise transfers SHALL respond with response
1755 code "4.02 Bad Option" if a client requests a block-wise transfer in the request.

1756 2.6.4 Multicast Operation

1757 2.6.4.1 IPv6 Multicast Port Number

1758 The default port number for KNX IoT multicast discovery SHALL be 5683 (CoAP default port number).

1759 2.6.4.2 CoAP multicast scopes

1760 IANA has reserved the IPv6 [RFC8200] address range ff0x::fd as the "All CoAP Nodes" variable scope
1761 multicast address [RFC7252]. The "x" designates the 4 bits that declare the multicast address scope; all
1762 scopes can be used in principle. This multicast address is used for CoAP service discovery; it SHALL
1763 NOT be used for other purposes. A device SHALL support CoAP multicast discovery by listening to this
1764 multicast address on the following scope:

1765 Link-local (2):

- 1766 • Typically used to query in a single Wi-Fi or Ethernet network segment.

1767 Realm-local (3):

- 1768 • Typically used to query in a single mesh topology IPv6 network.

1769 NOTE 7 Realm-local is defined for 6LoWPAN and is currently only implemented in certain IPv6 mesh network standards,
1770 e.g., Thread.

- 1771 • A LAN or Wi-Fi node SHOULD NOT send realm-local multicast messages.

1772 Realm-local (3) SHALL be the default scope to discover all nodes in a meshed network, i.e., across
1773 routing (on the same physical media) devices.

1774 Site-local (5):

- 1775 • Site-local is the default in an installation and spans across networks and stubs (Wi-Fi, Ethernet,
1776 and, Thread network segments).

1777 2.6.4.3 Response suppression

1778 If a query component is not present in a multicast request to `"/.well-known/core"`, the receiving CoAP
1779 server SHALL NOT respond to the query in compliance with [RFC6690] and [RFC7252]. If there is no
1780 matching result, e.g., the query result set has zero elements, and the request was sent as multicast, then a
1781 response to the query request SHALL NOT be sent. This behavior complies with [RFC6690] clause 4.1.
1782 If a multicast request was sent, any error responses (CoAP 4.xx or 5.xx class) SHALL be suppressed by
1783 the responding CoAP server. Only in the unicast case are error responses generated.

1784 2.6.4.4 Response timing

1785 The CoAP server SHOULD delay any response to a multicast query by a randomly chosen duration
1786 between 0 and `DEFAULT_LEISURE` (5 seconds, [RFC7252]).

1787 2.6.4.5 Sleepy devices

1788 Infrastructure devices (e.g., Thread Routing devices) have limited memory to cache messages on behalf
1789 of sleepy devices which have turned off the radio when idle to preserve battery lifetime. Reliable
1790 multicast communication to "sleepy" devices is not possible. Therefore, the communication patterns
1791 between devices SHOULD be designed so that sleepy devices are always the initiator of multicast
1792 messages.

1793 Sleepy KNX IoT devices that have received a request SHALL reply to requests within 2 seconds for at
1794 least one wake-up cycle. It is RECOMMENDED to increase linear wake-up cycles to have a reasonable
1795 reaction time on subsequent requests from clients.

1796 2.6.5 Multicast Group IP Addresses

1797 IPv6 Multicast *Group Address* is constructed using unicast-prefix-based multicast addresses [RFC3306,
1798 RFC3307] comprising:

- 1799 • The multicast prefix `FF3x` [RFC3306, Chapter 4], with `FF3` indicating a multicast address
1800 assigned based on the ULA routing prefix and `00PT` (`0b0011 = 0x3`) encoding the type of the
1801 following ULA routing prefix. `x` is any valid scope identifier defined in [RFC4291 and IANA
1802 registry], but SHALL NOT exceed the scope of the embedded ULA routing prefix [RFC3306].
- 1803 • The ULA routing prefix (`0xFD` + 40-bit KNX Installation ID),
- 1804 • and a 32-bit group identifier in the range `0x80000000` to `0xFFFFFFFF` [RFC3307, Chapter 4.3]

1805 The KNX Installation ID (see configuration property `"dev/iid"` in clause 2.5.6) SHALL be used for the
1806 system Unique Local Address (ULA) routing prefix.

1807 In a Thread network, for example, this multicast address type enables IP header compression down to 48
1808 bits [RFC6282] if the constrained stub network uses less than 16 compressible prefixes in total
1809 [e.g., Thread Specification, 6LoWPAN Contexts]. Therefore, for multicast group notifications among
1810 KNX IoT devices, the compressed address SHALL take the form of `ff3x::00:<group id>` [RFC6282,
1811 Chapter 3.1.1], with the ULA routing prefix and its type `PT` mapped to a context managed by the
1812 constrained stub network.

1813 Note that the lifetime of a unicast-prefix-based multicast address SHOULD NOT exceed the Valid
1814 Lifetime field in the Prefix Information option, corresponding to the ULA routing prefix being used,
1815 contained in the Neighbor Discovery Router Advertisement message [RFC3306].

1816 The group identifier SHALL be allocated either by a server (e.g., MaC) or the host (KNX IoT device),
1817 following the rules for server or host allocation referenced in [RFC3307]. The Function Point Table
1818 contains the configuration for the group identifier (see clause 2.5.7(00)).

1819 For example, the multicast groups SHALL be registered at the Thread Border Router to protect
 1820 constrained KNX IoT devices from undesired network loads. The multicast groups MAY be registered
 1821 through a configuration step, e.g., by the MaC, or the KNX IoT device MAY subscribe and maintain the
 1822 groups of interest by itself [Thread 1.2 Specification, Chapter 5.24]. In a Thread network, for example,
 1823 Rx-off-when-idle KNX IoT devices SHALL register multicast addresses with their Thread Parent to
 1824 receive them via link-layer unicast transmissions. Multicast packets of scope admin-local (x=4), scope
 1825 site-local (x=5), and higher will be forwarded by a backbone router function of a Border Router [Thread
 1826 1.2 Specification Chapter 9.4.7] in its default configuration if the multicast group is registered in the
 1827 border routers multicast listener table.

1828 NOTE 8 Source-Specific Multicast (SSM) is not supported for Thread Devices.

1829 Example site-local scoped multicast address: FF35::30:<ULA-routing-prefix>::<group id or ga>

1830 This results in the following IPv6 address format (example):

| Multicast prefix | ULA routing prefix | Group Identifier |
|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| FF35:0030: | FD11:2222:33a3:: | 8000:0068 |

1831

1832 2.6.6 Message Flow Control

1833 Flow control is used to limit messages between KNX IoT devices to prevent devices from being
 1834 overwhelmed with data. Publisher flow control is a mechanism that pushes the blocking behavior to the
 1835 data producer. When the message queue is full, the receiving device notifies the Publisher device to stop
 1836 sending new messages for a defined time.

1837 Suppose a KNX IoT device cannot serve a certain Publisher that is sending messages too fast; the device
 1838 SHOULD respond with a unicast message response code "4.29 Too Many Requests" and set the Max-
 1839 Age option to indicate the number of milliseconds after which the Publisher can retry.

1840 The time to wait in Max-Age SHOULD be enough to empty the message queue on the receiving KNX
 1841 IoT device.

1842 If a Publisher device receives the "4.29 Too Many Requests" response code from a KNX IoT device for a
 1843 publish message, it SHALL NOT send new publish messages before the time indicated in Max-Age has
 1844 passed.

1845 2.6.7 Creating, Updating, and Deleting Resources

1846 2.6.7.1 Introduction

1847 A MaC can create new resources and modify or delete existing resources (see clause 2.4.3.3
 1848 "Partial/Differential download"). However, a KNX IoT device MAY NOT check configurations before
 1849 applying (in a single or multiple "transaction"). Hence, the MaC SHALL write only correct and consistent
 1850 data to a KNX IoT device.

1851 2.6.7.2 Creating resources

1852 For example, a Function Point Table or Access Control List resource can be created by sending a POST
 1853 request to a resource representing a collection of resources (e.g., fp/g, fp/r, or fp/p). The request contains
 1854 an array of resource objects as primary data. The resource object SHALL contain an ID member created
 1855 by the MaC. An ID SHALL be specified with an "id" key, the ID SHALL be unique on the KNX IoT
 1856 device.

1857 If a POST request has been created successfully, the server SHALL return a "2.01 Created" response
 1858 code.

Write a list of items into the Function Point Table.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/g

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60)), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 13,          //id
    11: "/lds1/soo", //href
    7: [2305, 2401], //ga
    8: 216         //cflag: 0b11011000
  },
  {
    0: 14,          //id
    11: "/lds1/rsc", //href
    7: [2306],     //ga
    8: 64          //cflag: 0b01000000
  }
]
```

1859

1860 2.6.7.3 Updating resources

1861 If a request does not include all the members for a resource, the server SHALL interpret the missing
 1862 attributes as if they were included with their current values. The server SHALL NOT interpret missing
 1863 attributes as null values. For example, the following POST request is interpreted as a request to update
 1864 only the "href" member in the Group Object Table:

Write Function Point Table item.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/g

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60)), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 1,          //id
    11: "/lds1/soo" //href
  }
]
```

1865

1866 If an update is successful and the server does not update any attributes besides those provided, the
 1867 server SHALL return a "2.04 Changed" response code with no response document. When processing a
 1868 request to modify a resource that does not exist, a server SHALL return response code "4.04 Not Found"
 1869 with an empty payload.

1870 2.6.7.4 Deleting Resources

1871 An individual resource can be deleted by making a DELETE request to the resource's URL:

Delete Function Point Table item.

REQ:

```
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/g/1
(OSCORE(code(DELETE), kid(<osc-id>)))
```

1872 A server SHALL return a "2.02 Deleted" response code if a deletion request is successful with an empty
1873 payload.
1874

1875 A server SHALL return a "4.04 Not Found" response code if a deletion request fails due to the resource
1876 not existing.

1877 It is also possible to delete a collection of items from a resource list with a single POST request, for
1878 example, on fp/g, fp/r, or fp/p, by sending just the corresponding "id" without additional attributes.

Delete a list of Group Object Table items.

REQ:

```
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/g
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60)), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>))
```

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 13    //id
  },
  {
    0: 14    //id
  }
]
```

1879 A server SHALL return a "2.04 Changed" response code with no response document in the case all
1880 requested items are not present on the device anymore.
1881

1882 2.6.8 Pagination

1883 2.6.8.1 Basic principle

1884 A KNX IoT device (server) MAY want to limit the number of items returned in response to a subset
1885 ("page") of the whole set available. The page query parameter family "p" (e.g., "pn" or "ps") is reserved
1886 for pagination, and servers and clients SHALL use this key for pagination operations. A KNX IoT device
1887 SHALL support Linked List Pagination on all linked list resources (application/link-format).

1888 With the query parameter "pn={value}" the client can request the number of pages to skip before starting
1889 to collect the result set. The page size "ps" defines the number of items per page and is a fixed
1890 configuration on a KNX IoT device (server).

1891 If the request contains "ps", but the query parameter is not supported on the resource, then the server
1892 SHALL return a response code of "4.00 Bad Request".

1893 Single items or pages can be accessed with pagination query parameters starting with "pn=0" if no query
1894 parameter is present.

1895 Any link that could return a large payload (e.g., larger than min UDP frame size), potentially unbounded
 1896 list of items in its GET response, SHALL implement the "pn" query parameter for pagination using the
 1897 pattern described in the following example:

```

Pagination example that starts with the first list item (list size = 2 items).

REQ:
GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/f/rts?pn=0

RES:
2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))
Payload:
</p/rts/temproom>;rt=":dpa.321.51";ct=60,
</p/rts/tempcorrvalue>;rt=":dpa.321.111";ct=60
    
```

1898

1899 **2.6.8.2 List Metadata Query Parameter "I"**

1900 List metadata query parameters are used to provide additional information about the list, such as the list
 1901 size or default page size. The "I" query parameter SHALL be used exclusively, and a combination with
 1902 other query parameters on the same resource is not possible.

1903 To retrieve the value of {list-metadata}, a KNX IoT device SHALL accept a GET request to the URI
 1904 {list-path}?l={list-metadata}&l={list-metadata}. If at least one of the requested {list-metadata} is
 1905 supported, then the device SHALL return a response with CoAP response code "2.05 Content". The
 1906 response payload SHALL contain the {list-metadata} as key and the {metadata-value} of the specified
 1907 metadata as value. The content format is "application/link-format". The {point-path} in the response
 1908 SHALL NOT contain query parameters.

1909 If none of the requested {list-metadata} is supported, the device SHALL return a response with CoAP
 1910 response code "4.04 Not Found" with an empty payload.

```

Metadata read example for a selected list metadata member (list size).

REQ:
GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/r?l=total&l=ps

RES:
2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))
Payload:
</fp/r>;total=22;ps=5
    
```

1911

1912 KNX IoT defines a standard basic set of list metadata that MAY be applied to any Point. Standardized
 1913 KNX IoT list metadata attributes names (key) do not contain a namespace. The following table defines
 1914 the list metadata attributes for KNX IoT that the server MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL ("O")
 1915 supports:

1916

Table 41 – List metadata member

| Metadata Member | Resource Name | Method | Support | JSON Type | Notes |
|-----------------|---------------|--------|---------|-----------|---|
| Total | total | GET | M | Number | The total number of existing items in the whole list. |

| Metadata Member | Resource Name | Method | Support | JSON Type | Notes |
|-----------------|---------------|--------|----------|-----------|--------------------------------------|
| Page Size | ps | GET | M | Number | The default page size for pagination |

1917

1918 2.6.8.3 Link List

1919 A client MAY have to read multiple pages to get the full list of an application/link-format resource ("if.ll").

1921 Suppose the list has more than one page than "rt=p.next" SHALL indicate that more requests (pages) are needed to get the full list. The link in the <brackets> contains the next page the client can request.

1923 The client in the following example reads a resource list without the "p" pagination query parameter in the first request. The client knows that there is more to read because of the "rt=p.next" item. Hence, the client requests the next page with "pn=1".

Link list pagination example.

REQ:

```
GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/p
```

RES:

```
2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))
```

Payload:

```
</p/1>;rt=":dpa.x.y";ct=60,
</p/2>;rt=":dpa.x.z";ct=60,
</p/3>;rt=":mdt.siemens.x.y";ct=60,
</p?pn=1>;rt="p.next";ct=40
```

REQ:

```
GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/p?pn=1
```

RES:

```
2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/link-format (40))
```

Payload:

```
</p/4> rt=":dpa.x.y";ct=60,
</p/5> rt=":dpa.x.y";ct=60
```

1926

1927 2.6.9 S-Mode Group Communication

1928 2.6.9.1 Publish Group Notification – Unacknowledged Multicast

1929 In a brokerless system, a KNX IoT device MAY publish group notifications via IP multicast communication. The predefined default path structure ({messaging-path}) for S-Mode group notifications on IP multicast SHALL be ".knx".

1932 A KNX IoT device MAY support the configuration of the path structure. The MaC (Management Client) configures the path structure for an installation. In some cases, the configured path structure may differ from the predefined structure, for example, "kitchen/sensors/" (see clause 2.5.7.4.2 "Function Point Recipient Resource Object").

- 1936 CoAP [RFC7252] message fields SHALL be protected by OSCORE [RFC8613]. According to
 1937 [RFC8613] (clause 4.2.), the code (PUT/GET/POST, etc.) is encrypted and integrity protected to prevent
 1938 an intermediary from eavesdropping or manipulating the code (e.g., changing from GET to DELETE).
- 1939 KNX IoT multicast messages SHALL be encrypted and integrity protected. Request and response codes
 1940 are encrypted by OSCORE; see clause 3.6, "OSCORE Application Layer Security". Only dummy codes
 1941 (POST/Changed) are visible in the header of the OSCORE message.
- 1942 KNX IoT group notifications SHALL use POST inside the protected OSCORE message.
- 1943 In contrast to normal Point read/write communication (unicast), the MaC MAY configure the same
 1944 OSCORE credentials on multiple KNX IoT devices for S-Mode group communication. Therefore, an S-
 1945 Mode OSCORE multicast message SHALL contain the "kid_context" to avoid duplicating message
 1946 content. In addition, the KNX IoT message SHALL contain a "kid" with the corresponding OSCORE
 1947 input material identifier (osc-id) configuration in the access token.
- 1948 The MaC SHALL configure for each publisher KNX IoT device a unique "contextId" in the access token.
 1949 The "contextId" SHALL be unique among access tokens with the same OSCORE input material identifier
 1950 (osc-id). The Publisher KNX IoT device SHALL use the "contextId" for the "kid_context" in the
 1951 OSCORE message, and the Recipient KNX IoT device SHALL check the "kid" with the related access
 1952 token in the access control list.

PUBLISH Multicast S-Mode Group Message.

REQ:

```
POST coap://{ipv6-multicast}/{messaging-path}
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>),
kid_context(<contextID>)))
```

Payload:

```
{ 4: <KNX Individual Address>, 5: { 6: <st>, 7: <ga>, 1: <value> } }
```

1953

2.6.9.2 Publish Group Notification – Acknowledged Unicast

- 1954 For reliable unicast message transfer, the Publisher KNX IoT device SHALL use a confirmed transport
 1955 channel to a message broker or a Subscriber KNX IoT device, secured by OSCORE or, if supported, by
 1956 (D)TLS (coaps://).

- 1958 The destination resource ({messaging-path}) SHALL be of type "rt=urn:knx:g.s". A Publisher KNX IoT
 1959 device publishing to a Recipient device MAY indicate the maximum lifetime of the value by including
 1960 the Max-Age option in the publish request. The Recipient KNX IoT device SHALL return a response
 1961 code of "2.04 Changed" if the publish request is accepted.

- 1962 The Recipient KNX IoT device SHALL accept CoAP requests using the POST method.

Unicast S-Mode Group Message with (D)TLS destination URI from the Function Point Table.

REQ:

```
POST coaps://{messaging-destination-uri}/{messaging-path}
```

Payload:

```
{ 4: <KNX Individual Address>, 5: { 6: <st>, 7: <ga>, 1: <value> } }
```

1963

- 1964 For OSCORE application layer security, the KNX IoT device SHALL use credentials from the
 1965 corresponding OSCORE access token, configured by the MaC and by thus known by all involved peers.

- 1966 The MaC MAY configure a direct unicast message exchange in the Function Point Recipient Table. The
 1967 resulting KNX IoT unicast messages SHALL contain a "kid" with the OSCORE input material identifier
 1968 (osc-id) configuration in the access token.

- 1969 It is RECOMMENDED to configure new OSCORE credentials for each unicast S-Mode group
 1970 communication between two KNX IoT devices. The S-Mode OSCORE unicast message SHALL contain
 1971 the "kid_context" to avoid duplicating message content (see clause 3.6.4).
- 1972 After a device reset to a default configuration state, the MaC MAY use the same OSCORE master secret
 1973 ("ms") for device re-configuration. However, the MaC SHALL NOT reuse the "kid_context" and
 1974 configure a new "kid_context". The client KNX IoT device SHALL use the new configured "contextId"
 1975 for the "kid_context" in the OSCORE message in combination with the OSCORE message sequence
 1976 number starting again at 0.

Unicast S-Mode Group Message with OSCORE destination URI from the Function Point Table.

REQ:

POST coap://{messaging-destination-uri}/{messaging-path}
 (Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>),
 kid_context(<contextID>)))

Payload:

{ 4: <KNX Individual Address>, 5: { 6: <st>, 7: <ga>, 1: <value> } }

1977

2.6.9.3 Group Notification Subscription – Acknowledged Unicast

- 1978 A KNX IoT device SHALL allow OSCORE clients, and if supported (D)TLS clients, to subscribe to a
 1979 resource of type "rt=urn:knx:g.s" using the CoAP observe mechanism. The KNX IoT device adds the
 1980 Subscriber device to a list of Subscribers. After a successful subscription, the KNX IoT device sends
 1981 Group Message events to all devices in the list of Subscribers (e.g., monitoring device, Message Broker,
 1982 or KNX IoT Router).

- 1984 The MaC MAY configure a subscription in the Function Point Publisher Table. The resulting KNX IoT
 1985 unicast messages SHALL contain a "kid" with the OSCORE input material identifier (osc-id)
 1986 configuration in the access token.

- 1987 It is RECOMMENDED to configure new OSCORE credentials for each unicast S-Mode group
 1988 communication between two KNX IoT devices (see clause 2.6.9.2).

- 1989 Group messages from an intermediate service (e.g., KNX IoT Router) or a KNX IoT device SHALL
 1990 contain the *KNX Individual Address* (sia) from the origin KNX device in the payload.

PUBLISH S-Mode Group Message (destination URI from the Function Point Table).

REQ:

POST coap://{messaging-destination-uri}
 (Content-Format: application/json (50), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>), kid_context(<contextID>))

Payload:

{ "sia": <KNX Individual Address>, "s": { "st": <st>, "ga": <ga>, "value": <value> } }

RES:

2.04 CHANGED

1992

1993 **2.6.9.4 IP Address Resolving**

1994 The MaC usually configures the Function Point Table with device representations for runtime
 1995 communication, such as a *KNX Individual Address* or an FQDN. Before a KNX IoT device can send a
 1996 message, the device SHALL resolve the device representation to an IP address. If the KNX IoT device
 1997 can successfully resolve an IP address, then the device SHALL store the IP address locally in non-volatile
 1998 memory. The locally stored IP address SHOULD only be replaced once the re-resolution is successful.
 1999 The following IP address resolving steps are necessary:

2000 **Table 42 – IP address resolving steps**

| Step | Procedure | Description |
|------|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1 | MaC configures Function Point Table. | The MaC configures a destination <i>KNX Individual Address</i> , FQDN, or IP address for S-Mode runtime communication. |
| 2 | Initial IP address resolving. | If no IP address has been configured and the Device Load State Machine is "loaded", then the device SHOULD try to discover the IP address (see "Discover IP address" procedure). This step SHALL be delayed (jitter 0..60 sec.) to avoid network congestion, for example, after the device restarts or Device Load State Machine changes to "loaded". |
| 3 | S-Mode communication. | If no IP address is available, the device SHALL discover the IP address (see "Discover IP address" procedure). Suppose the device already has an IP address, but the destination device is unreachable, or a "server not found error" occurs. In that case, the device SHOULD continue with the "Discover IP address" procedure. |
| 4 | Discover IP address | The KNX IoT device discovers a commissioned KNX IoT device with at least security and a <i>KNX Individual Address</i> configured (see 2.6.1, Discovery). After a successful IP resolution step, the KNX IoT device changes the IP address in non-volatile memory. |

2001 **2.6.10 Point Publish/Subscribe**

2002 **2.6.10.1 Subscriptions**

2003 CoAP observe is the default subscription mechanism for KNX IoT. Hence, resources that support
 2004 subscriptions SHALL support CoAP observe [RFC8323].

2005 Points that implement a resource of type "rt=urn:knx:g.s" (/./knx) SHALL support CoAP observe. The
 2006 definition of other Points that support CoAP observe is manufacturer specific.

2008 A client SHALL use a CoAP observe (GET) in combination with the "It" query parameter for device
 2009 Point subscriptions.

2010 The KNX IoT device SHALL stop notifications after the configured subscription lifetime "It".

2011 When a client wants to subscribe to resources, for example, with a non-confirmable request on KNX IoT
 2012 sleepy devices, the CoAP Token is important for the binding between requests and responses. CoAP
 2013 [RFC7252] clause 3.5.1 does not give stricter guidelines than that the CoAP Tokens currently "in use"
 2014 SHOULD (not SHALL) be unique. However, a KNX IoT client and server SHALL make sure that CoAP
 2015 Tokens are not used in a way so that responses (or notifications) risk being associated with the wrong
 2016 request.

2017 Therefore, a client SHALL use new CoAP Tokens to re-subscribe on KNX IoT devices. The KNX IoT
2018 device (server) SHALL replace existing subscriptions based on the source IP address and IP port but
2019 SHALL NOT use the CoAP Token as an identifier for re-subscriptions.

2020 **2.6.10.2 Notifications**

2021 A notification event SHALL be sent to the subscriber IP address when the heartbeat time has elapsed
2022 since the previous message or the configured change of value (CoV) has exceeded the delta of the same
2023 value (see also clause 2.5.11.2, "Point Value Update Notification").

2024 The notification heartbeat is indicated with the Max-Age option in the notification message. Suppose no
2025 update is received within this heartbeat period. In this case, the Subscriber SHOULD invalidate the last
2026 received value, and the Subscriber SHOULD behave according to manufacturer or application-specific
2027 requirements that are not part of this specification.

2032 **3 Security**

2033 **3.1 Introduction**

2034 The following clauses describe a common approach in enabling a unified, multi-vendor building-
2035 automation solution meeting the technical requirements for a [62443-3-3] security Level 3 compliant
2036 installation. However, it remains the network administrator's responsibility to decide which security level
2037 an installation needs, and which infrastructure is needed to reach the security level (e.g., LDevID, a local
2038 Registrar/Domain CA, or a local KDC, etc.).

2039 An installation involves many parties to successfully operate a building automation system. Each party
2040 has a specific role in managing an installation. There are the following roles relevant to security
2041 management in an installation:

- 2042 • manufacturers of KNX IoT devices,
- 2043 • network administrators who are responsible for the secure operation of the overall network
2044 infrastructure,
- 2045 • system integrators who customize KNX IoT devices, integrate them into an installation, and
2046 perform commissioning,
- 2047 • facility managers who monitor the system during their normal operation and respond to alarms,
2048 • and service technicians who are responsible for maintaining and repairing the installation.

2049 Successful function of an installation is only possible when KNX IoT devices are correctly
2050 commissioned, operated, and maintained. Access scopes have been defined with these roles in mind,
2051 however, the mapping of roles and permissions to access scopes are out-of-scope of this document.
2052 Another key aspect of this security specification is the need to strengthen the trust relationship between
2053 the manufacturer and the operator by trusting the manufacturer device certificate IDevID (Initial Device
2054 ID).

2055 The solution can be deployed on top of any IP network deployment, providing uniform communication
2056 infrastructure independent of underlying networking technologies (e.g., Ethernet, Wi-Fi, or a Thread-
2057 based IEEE 802.15.4 network). At the transport level, a security zone concept based on IPv6 network
2058 segments (ULA prefix) and X.509 certificates can be configured that reflect diversely administered
2059 systems. A KNX IoT device may be a member of multiple security zones. On top of that, the application-
2060 level authorization of the Resource model limits the access scope of what a KNX IoT device is entitled to
2061 do within the scope of a single security zone. The following clauses describe a PAKE (Password
2062 Authenticated Key Exchange) and X.509 variants of operational device certificate (LDevID) enrollment
2063 procedures:

- 2064 • Simple Enrollment (Pull Certificate): A user with an on-premises MaC configures Registrar
2065 settings on a KNX IoT device. Subsequently, the KNX IoT device automatically enrolls the
2066 LDevID with a Registrar with the EST-CoAPS [RFC9148] protocol. The resulting LDevID has a
2067 finite lifetime.
- 2068 • Enrollment with MaC (Push Certificate): A user with an on-premises MaC configures the KNX
2069 IoT device LDevID. This enrollment procedure is usually used if the network infrastructure does
2070 not provide a Registrar service. Hence, the LDevID most probably has an infinite lifetime.
- 2071 • Authentication code-based enrollment: A user provides out-of-band a setup key (e.g., QR code,
2072 NFC, etc.) that all involved peers know. The resulting secure session between peers is used for
2073 authentication and access token configuration.

2074 **3.2 Device Identity Enrollment**

2075 **3.2.1 Common Requirements**

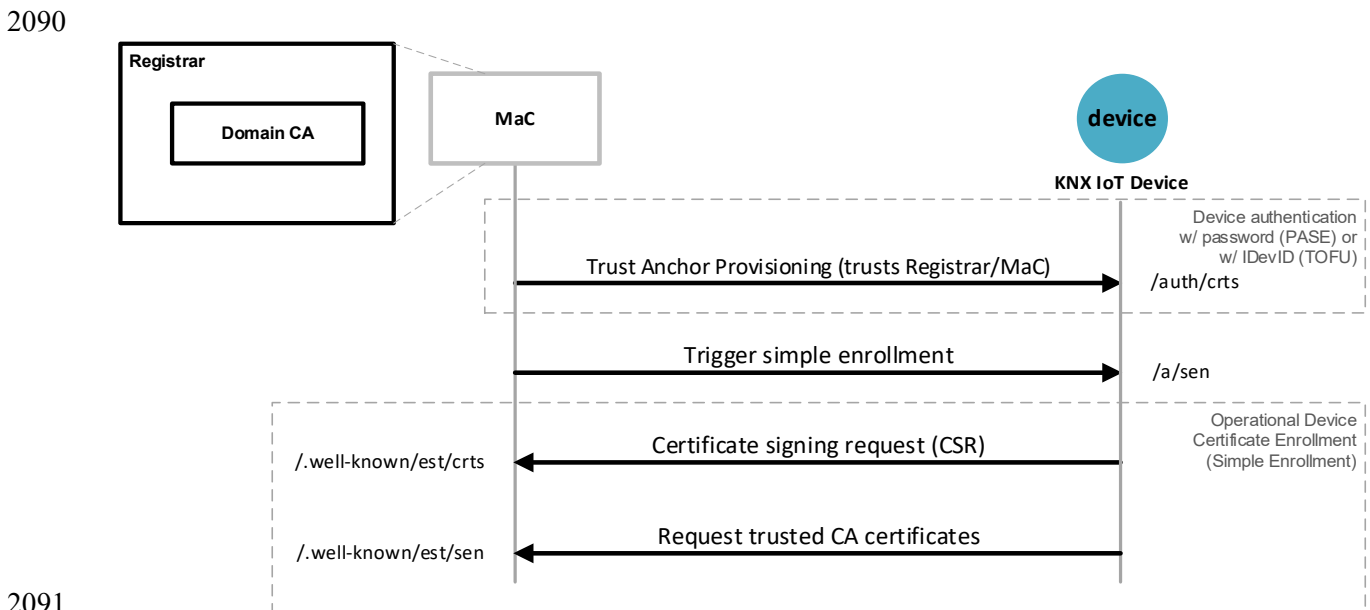
2076 When the new device is turned on, it looks for open networks for device enrollment. Once a network is
 2077 discovered, the device is ready for enrollment. A KNX IoT device MAY implement the simple
 2078 enrollment concept as defined in "EST over secure CoAP" [RFC9148].

2079 Before a device can join an installation or network (security zone), it SHALL be authenticated. However,
 2080 not all KNX IoT devices can perform EST enrollment and have an IDevID. Therefore, a KNX IoT device
 2081 SHALL support at least the PAKE method (see clause 3.6.2).

2082 The following clauses describe the general device identity enrollment flow of a new device that wants to
 2083 join a network.

2084 A KNX IoT device MAY be provisioned with a domain CA Trust Anchor and an operational device
 2085 certificate (LDevID). The process involves the following steps:

- 2086 • Device Authentication,
- 2087 • Domain CA Trust Anchor Provisioning,
- 2088 • a MaC (maybe) triggers the device to start the Operational Device Certificate (LDevID)
 2089 Enrollment.



2091

2092

Figure 18 – Device Identity Enrollment

2093 **3.2.2 Device Authentication**

2094 In the first step, a secure channel between a KNX IoT device and the Registrar SHALL be established.
2095 This can be initiated by a MaC/Registrar (PUSH with PAKE) or by the device with simple enrollment
2096 (PULL).

2097 For the simple enrollment, the KNX IoT device without LDevID SHALL use the IDevID as a client
2098 certificate for the mutual authenticated (D)TLS session with the Registrar. IDevID is a factory-imprinted
2099 certificate and serves as an initial proof of identity. If the Registrar is not accessible in the local network,
2100 the device MAY use a Proxy acting as a relay. The proxy function will vary based on L2 technology. For
2101 Thread-based devices, it might be (for instance) a border router, and for wired Ethernet, it might be either
2102 null or the switch. Hence, KNX IoT devices that support EST enrollment SHALL support brski-proxy
2103 and brski-registrar DNS-SD service names as defined in [RFC8995] clause 8.6 for Registrar discovery.
2104 The (D)TLS handshake SHALL perform mutual authentication based on the device manufacturer and
2105 Registrar certificates. The device lacks yet the domain CA to verify the Registrar certificate. Therefore, it
2106 SHALL provisionally accept the Registrar certificate to complete the (D)TLS handshake. At this stage,
2107 the Registrar MAY decide not to continue with the process if the KNX IoT device is not authorized to
2108 join the security zone (e.g., verification of the device Manufacturer certificate failed).

2109 **3.2.3 Domain CA Provisioning**

2110 A typical KNX IoT device contains no pre-configured operational trusts (CA certificates in the trust list)
2111 before first commissioning. In the second step, the Registrar configures the domain CA certificate on the
2112 device. In KNX IoT, the Domain CA is an operational Trust Anchor that:

- 2113 • issues operational device certificates (LDevID) for a particular KNX IoT device and certifies the
2114 ownership of a public key by the named subject of the KNX IoT device certificate to a security
2115 zone or, rather, an installation domain.
- 2116 • might be a local service entity such as a part of a MaC or is a remote service entity from a
2117 manufacturer or enterprise network.

2118 **3.2.4 Operational Device Certificate Enrollment (Pull Certificate)**

2119 **3.2.4.1 Requirements**

2120 The operational device certificate enrollment (PULL) requires that the new KNX IoT device first
2121 discovers the Registrar either by using DNS, mDNS, or the KNX IoT device has a configuration setting
2122 where to find the Registrar.

2123 In the next step, the KNX IoT device sends a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) to the Registrar.
2124 [RFC5967] defines the MANDATORY format for a CSR.

2125 A CSR MAY include all of the key details of the requested certificate, such as subject, organization, and
2126 state. The CSR SHALL include the specific subject distinguished name from the manufacturer device
2127 certificate (IDevID) and the LDevID certificate's public key to get signed. The private key SHALL NOT
2128 leave the device at any time and SHALL NOT be readable via MaC or any other (remote) communication
2129 connection.

2130 After sending the CSR, the Registrar MAY decide not to continue the process if the new KNX IoT device
2131 cannot be authorized automatically. The Registrar receiving this CSR SHOULD validate the proof-of-
2132 identity and then check the subject distinguished name included in the CSR with the manufacturer device
2133 certificate (IDevID). The CSR only gets signed by the Trust Anchor if all checks are successful.

2134 A successful response SHALL be a certs-only [CMC] Simple PKI Response (PKCS#7), as defined in
2135 [RFC5273]. The authorization at the Registrar is deployment specific and may need manual confirmation
2136 from a network administrator. As soon as the new KNX IoT device is authorized to join the domain, the
2137 Registrar returns the LDevID to the KNX IoT device. The returned LDevID SHALL be a security zone
2138 (e.g., installation domain) specific [X.509] device certificate.

2139 The enrollment process for a new LDevID is based on EST-CoAPS (Enrollment over Secure Transport)
 2140 [RFC9148]. Devices MAY re-enroll via EST at any time before certificate expiration but SHALL re-
 2141 enroll with their IDevID after certificate expiration.

2142 3.2.4.2 LDevID Simple Enrollment Command (a/sen)

2143 A MaC MAY start the LDevID enrollment; the KNX IoT device SHALL return a response with CoAP
 2144 response code "2.04 Changed" if the command was accepted.

2145 Table 43 defines the resource for triggering the LDevID enrollment with EST-CoAPS and a device
 2146 MANDATORY ("M") support.

2147 **Table 43 – LDevID enrollment resource**

| Resource path | Resource Types (rt) | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|---------------------|--------|--------|----------|---|--|
| a/sen | NA | cbor | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 2: "renew" } Res: 2.04 CHANGED | Starts the X.509 certificate enrollment. |

2148

2149 3.2.4.3 LDevID Simple Enrollment Resource Object

2150 Table 44 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") attributes and defines JSON keys and the CBOR mapping
 2151 for CoAP the request object to a/sen:

2152 **Table 44 – LDevID Simple Enrollment Resource Object members**

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Name |
|----------|----------|-------------|----------|---|
| "cmd" | 2 | text string | M | Command for triggering or stopping the LDevID simple enrollment. Enum: renew, stop |

2153

2154 3.2.5 Management Client as Registrar (Push Certificate)

2155 When a Registrar is unavailable in the installation, a Management Client (MaC) MAY serve this function.
 2156 Once a Registrar becomes available in the installation, devices will enroll with the IDevID described
 2157 above. For transition and mobility purposes, KNX IoT devices may continue to use any actively enrolled
 2158 certificate for communication until that certificate expires or is removed. Devices already using an
 2159 LDevID SHALL NOT make use of new LDevIDs issued from different Registrars until configured to do
 2160 so to avoid confusion in certificate selection.

2161 In the EST-CoAPS certificate enrollment flow, the KNX IoT device is the client and sends requests to the
 2162 Registrar (PULL). In a PUSH enrollment, the roles are changed. The MaC always acts as a client,
 2163 controls the communication flow with KNX IoT devices, and sends requests to the KNX IoT device. The
 2164 LDevID configuration is an additional step in the access token enrollment (see clause 3.6, "OSCORE
 2165 Application Layer Security"). A KNX IoT device in default configuration state SHALL accept client
 2166 (D)TLS sessions provisionally until the MaC has configured a domain CA.

2167 The KNX IoT device MAY begin the generation of a key pair as a result of the CSR request. Suppose the
 2168 KNX IoT device cannot immediately respond due to the time required to generate a key pair; the KNX
 2169 IoT device SHALL return response code "5.03 Service Unavailable" but uses the Max-Age option to
 2170 indicate the number of seconds after which to retry.

2171 Constrained KNX IoT devices MAY not have enough power and entropy sources to generate a random
 2172 private key. In this case, a tool can generate a key pair and write the private key and the LDevID
 2173 certificate to the device ("auth/skg"). The protocol design for simple enrollment and server-side key
 2174 generation reuses the same payload format defined in EST-CoAPS [RFC9148] clause 5.3.

2175 The KNX IoT device SHALL use for (D)TLS server authentication the LDevID for requests on "/.well-
 2176 known/knx/idevid" and the IDevID if the KNX IoT device is in default configuration state. For requests
 2177 on "/.well-known/knx/LDevID", the KNX IoT device SHALL return a response code of "4.04 Not
 2178 Found" if the device has no LDevID.

2179 Table 45 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL ("O") LDevID resources and the
 2180 corresponding resource path names on a KNX IoT device:

2181

Table 45 – Security configuration resources

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|-------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|--------|---------|---|--|
| auth | :fb.auth | link-format | GET | M | Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: </auth/at>;ct=40 60,</auth/crts>;ct=40 281,</auth/sen>;ct=281 286 287,</a/sen>; ct=60,</auth/o/replwdo> </auth/o/osndela y>;ct=60 | The response contains a list with points that belongs to the auth <i>Functional Block</i> , incl. the device trust list and access control list (see Table 46, Table 48, Table 45). |
| /.well-known/knx/idevid | :dpt.x509 | pkcs7-mime; smime-type=certs-only | GET | O | Res: Content-Format: application/pkcs7-mime; smime-type=certs-only Payload: <X.509 binary DER encoded> | X.509 binary DER encoded manufacturer device certificate. The server SHALL use the IDevID for (D)TLS sessions in the default configuration state (server certificate). If the server already has a configured LDevID (operational device certificate), then the server SHALL use the LDevID for (D)TLS sessions (server certificate). Resource path is MANDATORY if the device supports (D)TLS. |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|------------------------|-----------------|--|--------|---------|---|---|
| /well-known/knx/idevid | :dpt.x509 | pkcs7-mime; smime-type=certs-only | GET | O | Res: Content-Format: application/pkcs7-mime; smime-type=certs-only Payload: { X.509 binary DER encoded } | X.509 binary DER encoded operational device certificate. If supported, then the server SHALL use the IDevID (manufacturer device certificate) for the (D)TLS session (server certificate). Resource path is MANDATORY if the device supports (D)TLS. |
| a/sen | NA | cbor | POST | O | Res: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 2: "renew" } | Triggers LDevID enrollment. MANDATORY if EST enrollment is supported. |
| auth/sen | :dpt.varOctet | pkcs10 | GET | O | Res: Content-Format: application/multipart-core Payload: <PKCS#10> | The enrollment (sen) request based on [RFC9148] (see example clause A.2) is used to read a [PKCS#10] (including proof-of-possession) certificate signing request (CSR) from a KNX IoT device. The request SHALL generate a response code "4.04 Not Found" if the device supports only server-side key generation (skg). |
| auth/sen | :dpt.varOctet | pkcs7-mime; smime-type=certs-only, pkix-cert | POST | O | Req: Content-Format: application/multipart-core Payload: <PKCS#7> OR Req: Content-Format: application/multipart-core Payload: <Single X.509 binary DER encoded> | The request based on [RFC9148] (see example clause A.2) is used to write a device certificate signing response (PKCS#7) to a KNX IoT device. The request SHALL generate a response code "4.04 Not Found" if the device supports only server side key generation (skg). |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------|---|--------|---------|--|--|
| auth/skg | :dpt.varOctet | /pkcs7-mime; smime-type=100 onfir-generated-key | POST | O | Req: Content-Format: application/pkcs7-mime; smime-type=server-generated-key Payload: { PKCS#7, PKCS#8 } | With server-side key generation, a tool can write the private key and a certificate to the device ([PKCS#7] and [PKCS#8] format). The request based on [RFC9148] (see example clause C.3) SHALL generate a response code "4.04 Not Found" if the device supports only simple enrollment (sen). |

2182

2183 3.3 Device Identity Certificates

2184 3.3.1 Manufacturer Device Certificates (IDeVID)

2185 The IDeVID is used for bootstrapping when the new KNX IoT device is not initialized. The IDeVID
2186 [802.1AR] manufacturer device certificate is an assertion of the KNX IoT device manufacturer as to the
2187 device's unique identity. The IDeVID subject field SHALL contain the "serialNumber" attribute with the
2188 device's unique *KNX serial number* ([802.1AR] clause 4.1.2.4).

2189 It is RECOMMENDED that the manufacturer device certificate is permanently stored in a security
2190 module. The IDeVID is only used for commissioning until certificate bootstrapping is completed and gets
2191 replaced by the LDeVID for normal runtime communication. Hence, the IDeVID SHOULD NOT be used
2192 for proof-of-identity after successful LDeVID certificate bootstrapping but SHALL be reactivated after a
2193 device reset to a default configuration state. KNX IoT devices MAY use the IDeVID to create different
2194 identities for other purposes, such as OSCORE access token configuration in smaller and non-critical
2195 installations if no LDeVID has been configured.

2196 IDeVIDs SHALL have indefinite expiration dates; hence SHALL use the GeneralizedTime value [X.509].
2197 Validating entities SHOULD ignore validity period information in the [X.509] certificate. This ensures
2198 that KNX IoT device authentication can always be verified during [X.509] path validation. The Registrar
2199 and its network administrator are responsible for determining the trustworthiness of an IDeVID and its
2200 signer. A manufacturer MAY include a URL that points to a certificate revocation list (CRL) in the
2201 signing certificate for the device. A local network (Registrar) SHOULD check the CRL
2202 (e.g., manufacturer device CRL published in the Internet or local configuration) before registering a
2203 device.

2204 The IDeVID X.509 certificate SHALL contain the MANDATORY fields as specified in [802.1AR],
2205 including:

- 2206 • tbs certificate (To Be Signed)
- 2207 ○ subjectPublicKeyInfo
- 2208 ○ issuer; O=[Manufacturer] CN=[Manufacturer CA]
- 2209 ○ subject; O=[Vendor] CN=[Product ID] serialNumber=[*KNX serial number*]
- 2210 ○ validity; Not After: Dec 31 23:59:59 9999 GMT (GeneralizedTime [X.509])
- 2211 ○ version; SHALL be version 3
- 2212 ○ serialNumber; certificate serial number
- 2213 ○ signature
- 2214 • signatureAlgorithm; SHALL be ecdsa-with-SHA256 and secp256r1
- 2215 • signatureValue

2216 3.3.2 Operational Device Certificates (LDevID)

2217 The LDevID [802.1AR] operational device certificate is a [X.509] certificate for a particular KNX IoT
2218 device, especially in large installations, in the network administrator's responsibility. These certificates
2219 are used to identify the device to the network. They are also used to establish [RFC7515] tokens, as
2220 required, and MAY be used for different purposes (e.g., at the link layer, network layer, or application
2221 layer) for application-layer authentication.

2222 An LDevID contains authentication information in the Subject Alternative Name (SAN) to associate it
2223 with a particular security zone. Hence [X.509] certificates SHALL NOT contain multiple security zones
2224 (e.g., more than one rfc822Name field). In addition, the wildcard character "*" is neither allowed in the
2225 Subject Alternative Name extension nor the common name. The LDevID subject field SHALL contain
2226 the "serialNumber" attribute from the IDevID with the device's unique *KNX serial number*. This serial
2227 number SHOULD be printed on the device housing (e.g., in a QR code) for visual validation and can be
2228 discovered, for example, with /.well-known/core?ep=knx://sn.lcaffe1234 or with DNS-SD (see clause
2229 2.6.1 "Discovery").

2230 How an operational device certificate is issued depends on the certificate bootstrapping method and the
2231 certificate lifecycle management during operation. The KNX IoT device SHALL have a new key pair
2232 before requesting a new operational device certificate. The KNX IoT device either generates the key pair
2233 locally or, if possible, obtains the key pair from a trusted Registrar or MaC.

2234 All stored operational device certificates and their associated private keys SHALL be deleted on the
2235 device reset to the default state of the KNX IoT device. LDevIDs are expected to be periodically updated.
2236 The length of time a certificate is valid is up to the deployment. A RECOMMENDED certificate lifetime
2237 is less than one year. However, if the deployment does not have mature processes to update certificates,
2238 the lifetime MAY be infinite. Vice versa, if the deployment does not have a mature process to manage the
2239 revocation of certificates, then the lifetime MAY be significantly less than one year (e.g., 90 days).

2240 Operational certificate Trust Anchors MAY contain a pointer to a CRL. However, KNX IoT devices are
2241 not expected to support OCSP.

2242 The LDevID X.509 certificate SHALL contain the MANDATORY fields as specified in [X.509]
2243 clause 4.1, including:

- 2244 • tbs certificate (To Be Signed)
- 2245 ○ subjectPublicKeyInfo
- 2246 ○ issuer;
- 2247 ○ subject; O=[Vendor] CN=[Product ID] serialNumber=[*KNX serial number*]
- 2248 ○ validity
- 2249 ○ version; SHALL be version 3
- 2250 ○ serialNumber; certificate serial number
- 2251 ○ signature
- 2252 • signatureAlgorithm; see clause 3.4.2, "Device Certificate Cipher Suites"

- 2253
- signatureValue

2254 **3.4 Certificate Validation**

2255 **3.4.1 General Requirements**

2256 KNX IoT devices SHALL follow the procedure defined in RFC 5280 [X.509] to verify certificates.

2257 As a summary of the procedure defined in RFC5280:

- 2258
- Certificate verifiers SHALL reject certificates that contain one or more unsupported critical extensions.
- 2259
- Any extension not listed by name within this document SHOULD NOT be included within a compliant certificate and, if included, SHALL NOT be marked critical.
- 2260
- In an authentication exchange, the KNX IoT device SHOULD supply a complete and valid chain
- 2261 comprising its certificate and any intermediate CA certificate between the KNX IoT device and
- 2262 the Root CA.
- 2263
- 2264

2265 KNX IoT devices use [X.509] certificates for mutual authentication for device-to-device communication

2266 based on (D)TLS. Server identities SHALL be checked as described in [RFC2818] clause 3.1. If a

2267 security zone is configured, then the client and server side SHALL check the [X.509] subjectAltName

2268 (e.g., rfc822Name) field in the LDevID with the settings in the KNX IoT device Access Control List.

2269 A certificate policy applies to the certification process, from root down to KNX IoT device. This is

2270 reflected in the certificate by including the policy OID in all the certificates in the chain. Hence, policy

2271 mapping is not supported, and certificates containing policy mappings SHALL be rejected. Therefore,

2272 issuers SHOULD NOT include policy qualifiers in operational device certificates. However, verifiers

2273 SHOULD accept certificates containing policy qualifiers unless there are other reasons to do so.

2274 To defend against brute-force attacks, the KNX IoT device SHALL limit (D)TLS session establishment

2275 retries after a predefined number of consecutive invalid access attempts, e.g., wrong certificate. The KNX

2276 IoT device SHALL block further attempts. (D)TLS session establishment attempts SHOULD be limited

2277 to at most one attempt per 3000 seconds on average in 24 hours.

2278 **3.4.2 Device Certificate Cipher Suites**

2279 Elliptic curve cryptography (ECC [RFC4492]) provides the cryptographic basis for secure

2280 communication with resource-constrained KNX IoT devices due to its small key size and comparably low

2281 arithmetic requirements. All KNX IoT devices supporting identity certificates [X.509] SHALL support

2282 the following cipher suite for communication: TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CCM_8

2283 [RFC7251].

2284 Specifically, the device identity certificate [X.509] will use ECC NIST P-256 (secp256r1 or prime256v1)

2285 [RFC4492]. The signer of the certificate SHALL also use NIST P-256 (secp256r1) and ecdsa-with-

2286 SHA256 (ECDSA with SHA256).

2287 Cryptographic suites SHALL be updated from time to time. As such, future releases of this specification

2288 may require more than one algorithm for backward compatibility and improved security. Algorithms may

2289 also be deprecated.

2290 3.5 Device Access Control

2291 3.5.1 General Requirements

2292 Complementing the core principles of the defense-in-depth protection strategy and the overarching
2293 principles of information security, access management itself has a series of core guiding principles, as
2294 follows:

- 2295 • Categorization and classification: Clearly categorize and value all data (see clause 3.5.3 "Access
2296 Scope").
- 2297 • Least privilege: Provide the least amount of access necessary for a given entity to complete its
2298 system role.
- 2299 • Need to know: Provide access to systems and information only where there is a need for the
2300 Recipient to have access.
- 2301 • Controlled access: Define procedures to monitor, enable and disable access methods and enforce
2302 security policy at all access points.

2303 Effectively applying these principles to a KNX IoT System throughout processes, networks, and users
2304 will ensure that access-related risks are appropriately controlled, allowing authorized access when
2305 required and preventing unauthorized access.

2306 The following clauses describe how initial access control privileges for a KNX IoT device are enrolled
2307 during the commissioning phase and how a KNX IoT device grants access to resources by verifying
2308 requests against the device access control list (configured access tokens) and trust list.

2309 3.5.2 Trust List Resource (auth/crts)

2310 3.5.2.1 General Requirements

2311 A trust list is a list of device certificates or CA certificates that are trusted for authentication and are a
2312 MANDATORY functionality of KNX IoT devices if the device supports (D)TLS. The KNX IoT device
2313 SHALL reject connections from peers whose device certificate or CA certificate is not in the trust list or
2314 if the certificate is expired. Entries in the trust list will be added and removed as an explicit administrative
2315 action reflecting changes in trust relationships in conjunction with the access control list; in other words,
2316 only a MaC with admin ("if.sec") rights can configure the trust list.

2317 A KNX IoT device SHALL support multiple MaC or Registrars with admin rights. Hence, the trust list
2318 SHALL support the configuration of at least 3 CA certificates (e.g., MaC, Registrar, and KDC).

2319 A MaC SHALL write certificates to the KNX IoT device trust list. The [PKCS#7] defines a container
2320 format that includes just the public certificate or may include an entire certificate chain or a signature of
2321 the encapsulated data structure. The [PKCS#7] or X.509 binary DER encoded format SHALL be used to
2322 add new trust relations to other peers. A KNX IoT device MAY support only one format.

2323 Table 46 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL ("O") Trust List resources and the
2324 corresponding resource path names on a KNX IoT device:

2325

Table 46 – Trust List resources

| Resource path | Resource Types (rt) | Format | Method | Support | Request-Response | Notes |
|---------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--------|---------|---|---|
| auth/crts | NA | application/link-format | GET | O | Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: </auth/crts/cert-id>;ct=281 287 | Collection of configured X.509 certificate thumbprints (cert-id). |

| Resource path | Resource Types (rt) | Format | Method | Support | Request- /Response | Notes |
|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|--------|---------|---|--|
| auth/crts | NA | pkcs7- mime, pkix-cert | POST | O | Req: Content- Format: application/pkcs7- mime; smime- type=certs-only Payload: <PKCS#7> OR Req: Content- Format: application/pkix- cert Payload: <X.509 binary DER encoded> | Configures a PKCS#7 or X.509 binary DER encoded certificate list based on [RFC9148] |
| auth/crts/{cert- id} | NA | NA | DELETE | O | Res: 2.02 DELETED | Delete a configured token from a KNX IoT device |

2326

2327 3.5.3 Access Scope

2328 Access Scopes are the permission grants that client applications require for authorization and use of Points
2329 on a server device. A Point SHALL be assigned to at least one access scope. The access rights of a client
2330 are limited to the granted scopes in the access token or the device access control list (e.g., for OSCORE).

2331 The number of scope identifiers (the granularity) supported by the server device is device-specific.
2332 Generally, it matches the capabilities of the server device and the expected kinds of data it contains.
2333 However, KNX IoT devices (servers) SHALL support the predefined scope meanings and identifiers, and
2334 for interoperability, it is RECOMMENDED to use the predefined scope identifiers whenever possible.

2335 The following table defines the default KNX IoT access scopes. Scopes are mapped to one or more
2336 interfaces (if). The interface definition and the allowed CoAP Methods for a particular scope are defined in
2337 clause 2.5.3, "Interface Types (if)":

2338

Table 47 – KNX IoT Access scopes

| Scope | CBOR Type | if | Description |
|--------|-------------|-------------|--|
| if.i | text string | if.i | Write and command runtime input Group Object Point. |
| if.o | text string | if.o | Read and subscribe runtime output Group Object Point. |
| if.g.s | text string | if.g.s | Group communication (S-Mode) runtime interworking (input and output) for all <i>Group Addresses</i> ("ga"). |
| <ga> | unsigned | if.g.s | Group communication (S-Mode) runtime interworking (input and output) for a particular <i>Group Address</i> ("ga"). |
| if.p | text string | if.p, if.ll | Adjust (write, read) Parameter Property (Point), incl. metadata. |
| if.d | text string | if.d, if.ll | Read Diagnostic Property (Point), incl. metadata. |
| if.a | text string | if.a | Hardwired actuator (digital or analog output). |

| Scope | CBOR Type | if | Description |
|--------|-------------|-------------------|--|
| if.s | text string | if.s | Hardwired sensor (digital or analog input). |
| if.c | text string | if.p, if.d, if.ll | Configure device (commissioning) functionality or Function Point Tables. |
| if.sec | text string | if.sec, if.swu | Configuration (read and write) of security, incl. metadata and authorization-related data. |
| if.swu | text string | if.swu | Software update (push and pull) related data, incl metadata. |

2339

2340 3.5.4 Device Access Control List Resource (auth/at)

2341 3.5.4.1 Common requirements

2342 The device access control list is a MANDATORY functionality of KNX IoT devices and specifies which
 2343 entities (user, application, or device) have access. The list contains permissions, which control access to
 2344 KNX IoT device resources (Points) and what operations are allowed on given resources (GET, PUT, etc.).

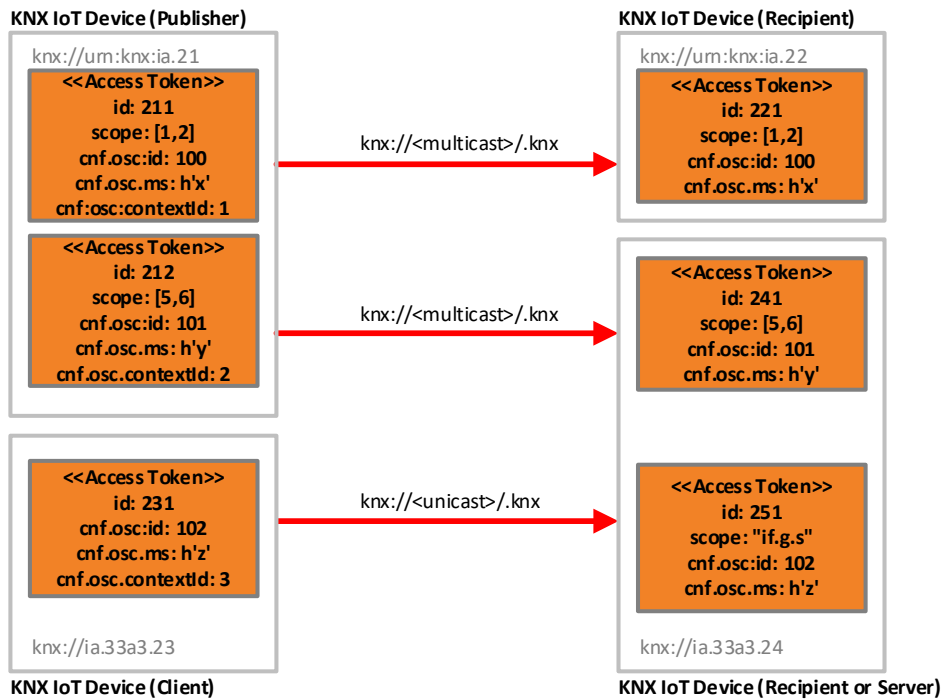
2345 Each permission in the device access control list identifies an authorized entity and specifies the access
 2346 rights for that entity (e.g., allowed or denied). It is up to the system integrator, in collaboration with the
 2347 network administrator, to define permission rules for an entity. As a precondition for any access control
 2348 decisions, the KNX IoT device SHALL authenticate and authorize the peer by verifying its [X.509]
 2349 certificate and/or pre-shared key (OSCORE). Verification includes the following steps:

- 2350 • The pre-shared key SHALL be configured in the device access control list (access token).
- 2351 • The pre-shared key SHALL have permission rights on the resource server to access the
 2352 corresponding resource (access scope).
- 2353 • The operational device certificate is correctly signed by a trusted CA (see clause 3.4). The trusted
 2354 CA certificate SHALL be configured in the device trust list.
- 2355 • The peer's identity in the [X.509] operational device certificate (e.g., Subject and/or
 2356 SubjectAltName name) is an entity that is authorized to access the required resources. The entity
 2357 SHALL be validated with the corresponding access token (access scope) in the access control list.

2358 Suppose a security zone has no exclusive CA certificate, such as an intermediate CA. In this case, the
 2359 KNX IoT device access token SHALL contain settings in the subject (sub) attribute equivalent to name
 2360 constraints defined in [X.509] clause 4.2.1.10.

2361 Devices that cannot reliably keep track of time SHALL accept all credentials even if the credential
 2362 lifetime has expired. This requirement MAY change in a future specification, but no expiration time can
 2363 be configured yet for pre-shared key access tokens (OSCORE). It is the responsibility of the KDC to
 2364 rotate and delete access tokens with an appropriate interval and the overlap of active and new pre-shared
 2365 keys.

2366 Group communication credential configurations SHALL contain only *Group Address* <ga> scopes in the
 2367 access token. A combination with other scopes, such as "if.p", is impossible since incoming and outgoing
 2368 communications use the same credentials. For example, devices in the following figure with the access
 2369 token ID 211, 212, 221, and 241 SHALL accept incoming and outgoing messages on configured *Group*
 2370 *Addresses*.



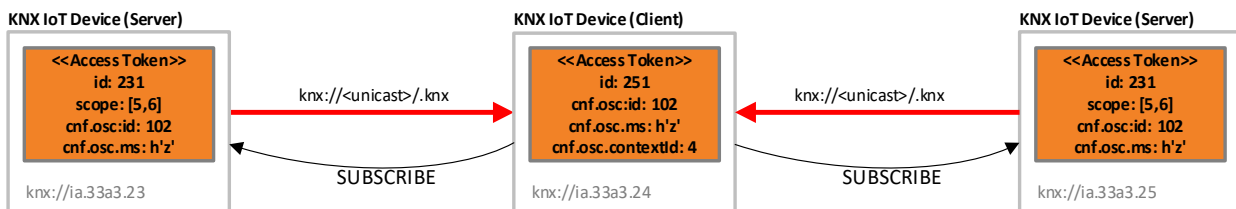
2371
2372

Figure 19 – Access Token Configuration Example

2373 The MaC SHALL configure the corresponding access token in the Function Point Table for outgoing
2374 messages (Publisher or client KNX IoT device). Figure 19 depicts two KNX IoT devices (Publisher)
2375 that send multicast and unicast messages to the devices with the *KNX Individual Address* "24" and "22". The
2376 corresponding access tokens are configured in the Function Point Recipient Table.

2377 The MaC can limit permissions on the resource server for an access token to a set of *Group Addresses*. The
2378 multicast examples in Figure 19 have a limited set of *Group Addresses* configured in the access scope on
2379 the Recipient device. Only S-Mode messages with the corresponding *Group Addresses* (1/2 or 5/6) are
2380 accepted. However, the Publisher device SHALL ignore scope definitions in the access token.

2381 A MaC MAY configure the same OSCORE credentials for device subscriptions on multiple devices. A
2382 typical use case for such a configuration is a controller with multiple sensors and actuators. Figure 20
2383 depicts a KNX IoT device that subscribes (Subscriber/client) to "/.knx", and the publishing device
2384 (Publisher/server) sends notification messages back to the Subscriber. The Subscriber KNX IoT device has
2385 the corresponding access tokens configuration in the Function Point Publisher Table. However, the
2386 Publisher device SHALL only send S-Mode notifications containing the configured *Group Addresses* in
2387 the scope of the access token that was used for the corresponding subscription request.



2388
2389

Figure 20 – Subscription Access Token Configuration Example

2390 Suppose the MaC wants to change access token credentials (e.g., pre-shared tool key) on a KNX IoT device.
2391 In this case, the MaC SHALL use different credentials for writing than those credentials configured in the
2392 new modified access token (existing token to be changed). Therefore, the MaC SHALL configure the new
2393 access token first and delete the old access token with a subsequent request.

2394 Table 48 specifies an example of the MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL ("O") token configuration
 2395 resources on a KNX IoT device.

2396 **Table 48 – Access token configuration resources on a KNX IoT device (EXAMPLE)**

| Resource path | Resource Types (rt) | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--------|----------|--|--|
| auth/at | NA | cbor | POST | M | Req: Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 0:"oc5", 9: ["if.sec"], 38: 2, 8: { 4: { 4: 10, 0: <id-osc>, 2: <ms> }}} | Credentials configuration for KNX IoT device access. For example, a device (Registrar or KDC) can configure access token profiles for security credentials ("if.sec") with its X.509 certificate or existing OSCORE token. An empty element (only "id") in the payload will cause the deletion of a corresponding existing element. |
| auth/at | NA | application/link-format | GET | M | Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: </auth/at/12345>;ct=60 | Reads a collection of all configured tokens from a KNX IoT device |
| auth/at/{token-id} | NA | cbor | GET | M | Res: 2.05 CONTENT Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 0: "bc6", 2: "<.inst1.local>", 9: ["if.sec"], 38: 254, 8: { 4: "<trust list [X.509]fingerprint>" }} | Reads a specific token profile from a KNX IoT device (e.g., coap_oscore or coap_tls with X.509 certificates), |
| auth/at | NA | NA | DELETE | M | Res: 2.02 DELETED | Delete all configured tokens from a KNX IoT device |

| Resource path | Resource Types (rt) | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------|--------|----------|-------------------|---|
| auth/at/{token-id} | NA | NA | DELETE | M | Res: 2.02 DELETED | Delete a configured token from a KNX IoT device |

2397

2398 3.5.4.2 Access Token Resource Object

2399 For KNX IoT access rights configuration, the CWT (CBOR Web Token) format [RFC8392] is used in
2400 combination with [RFC8747]. The following fields are MANDATORY for each access token item:

- 2401 • id: Token ID for updating and deleting an item on a device. The ID SHALL contain only
2402 characters as defined for the URI-Reference in [RFC3986] since the ID is also used in the access
2403 token resource path.
- 2404 • cnf: Key configuration (either a link to the trust list or OSCORE key settings).
- 2405 • profile: The token profile defines further MANDATORY members (M).
- 2406 • scope: Needed for both X.509 certificate and OSCORE.

2407 Table 49 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL ("O") access token attributes and names.
2408 MANDATORY ("M") attributes SHALL be present in the message, and OPTIONAL ("O") may be
2409 present in the message, but the attributes SHALL be supported on the device.

2410

Table 49 – Access token item members

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Name |
|----------|----------|-------------|------------|---|
| "id" | 0 | text string | M | Access token ID as ASCII string of numbers and lowercase letters (maximum length: 32 bytes); The ID SHALL be unique on a device and SHOULD be unique in an installation. |
| "cnf" | 8 | map | M | confirmation key; e.g., with a symmetric proof-of-possession key [RFC 8392] |
| "osc" | 4 | map | (M) | OSCORE confirmation key (see clause 3.6.2 "OSCORE Key Configuration Resource Object") |
| "kid" | 2 | text string | O | Key Identifier: Acts as an "alias" for the key and MAY be a Link to [X.509] certificate in the Trust List (e.g., x.509 thumbprint). Note: This "kid" is used for X.509 certificates but not for the "kid" in the OSCORE message. |
| "sub" | 2 | text string | O | Subject of the access token (used if [X.509] CA cert. is ambiguous, and the SAN SHALL be restricted) [RFC 8392] |
| "exp" | 4 | unsigned | O | The token is valid until a defined time. Epoch-based date/time (NumericDate [RFC8392]) |

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Name |
|-----------|----------|---------------------------------|---------|---|
| "nbf" | 5 | unsigned | O | Token is not valid before a defined time (Not before). Epoch-based date/time (NumericDate [RFC8392]) |
| "scope" | 9 | string array, unsigned array | M | Array of interfaces as defined in clause 3.5.3 "Access Scope" [RFC 8392] (string) or a list of <i>Group Addresses</i> (unsigned). The Access Control List SHALL support >= 20 array elements. |
| "profile" | 38 | unsigned | M | access token profile; SHALL be set to 1: "coap_dtls" for [X.509] certificates with DTLS [RFC 8392], 2: "coap_oscore" [OSCORE], 254: "coap_tls" [OSCORE] for [X.509] certificates with TLS, or 255: "coap_pase" [OSCORE] with PASE credentials |

2411

2412 3.5.5 Revocation List

2413 A revocation list is a Blacklist of digital certificates that a trustworthy entity has revoked before their
 2414 scheduled expiration date. Digital certificates (X.509 certificates) in the revocation list are no longer
 2415 trusted, and requests SHALL be declined from devices that use a certificate from the revocation list.
 2416 Digital certificates are revoked for many reasons. For example, if a certificate is discovered to be
 2417 counterfeit, the Trust Anchor will revoke it and add it to the revocation list of each KNX IoT device in the
 2418 system. A common reason for revocation occurs when the owner of the Domain CA no longer owns
 2419 devices, or the original certificate is replaced with a different certificate from a new Trust Anchor
 2420 (e.g., after commissioning).

2421 The problem with revocation lists, as with all Blacklists, is that they are difficult to maintain and are an
 2422 inefficient and unreliable method of distributing in real-time. Furthermore, the revocation list size is
 2423 limited, especially on constrained devices; therefore, a revocation list on a KNX IoT device is
 2424 RECOMMENDED. If present, the list SHOULD be updated only under exceptional circumstances. The
 2425 process of updating revocation lists is manufacturer-specific and not part of this document.

2426 3.6 OSCORE Application Layer Security

2427 3.6.1 General Requirements

2428 This clause describes the configuration of OSCORE credentials. OSCORE application layer security is
 2429 needed for the following reasons:

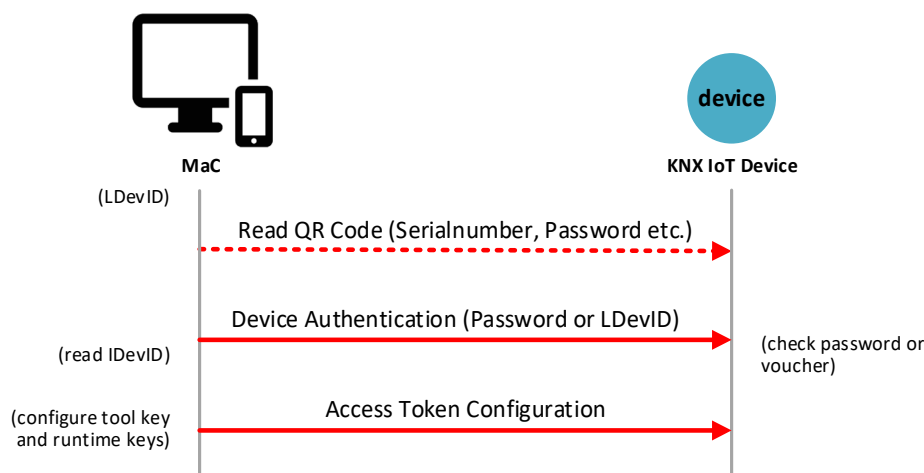
- 2430 • Low-latency communication: (D)TLS can only be used for unicast point-to-point communication
 2431 but not for secure multicast group communication (e.g., switch on a light group). In addition,
 2432 (D)TLS needs a time-consuming (on constrained devices) session key establishment before peers
 2433 can start communicating. The resulting latency is not acceptable for some applications like
 2434 lighting.
- 2435 • Application layer end-to-end security: The (D)TLS security terminates at proxies and message
 2436 brokers, making this intermediary node capable of accessing and manipulating any part of the
 2437 message payload and metadata.

2438 OSCORE, as defined in this document, uses pre-shared keys to secure communication between peers (no
 2439 session establishment needed). OSCORE protects unicast and multicast CoAP application payload end-
 2440 to-end across intermediary nodes (i.e., proxies and message brokers). Therefore, all KNX IoT devices
 2441 SHALL support OSCORE for unicast and multicast communication.

2442 OSCORE [RFC8613] essentially protects the RESTful interactions (including replay protection), the
 2443 request method, the requested resource, the message payload, etc. OSCORE neither protects the CoAP
 2444 messaging layer nor the CoAP token, which may change between the resources. OSCORE requires all
 2445 KNX IoT devices belonging to the same KNX group to establish a shared security context used to process
 2446 COSE [RFC8152] (CBOR Object Signing and Encryption) objects. OSCORE uses COSE with an AEAD
 2447 [RFC5116] (Authenticated Encryption with Additional Data) algorithm for protecting message data
 2448 (encryption) between a client and a server. The CoAP payload SHALL be encrypted in the COSE object.

2449 The following figure depicts the general workflow for configuring access tokens on a KNX IoT device.
 2450 The access token configuration flow includes the following three steps:

- 2451 • The MaC has a means to authenticate the KNX IoT device. This MAY be an authentication code
 2452 or an LDevID after device identity enrollment (see clause 3.2). If the KNX IoT device already
 2453 has an LDevID, then the Registrar (e.g., MaC) SHALL have "if.sec" access rights configured in
 2454 the access control list of the KNX IoT device.
- 2455 • Suppose the MaC has just an authentication code; then the MaC uses the Password Authenticated
 2456 Session Establishment (PASE) for device authentication (see clause 3.6.3). Subsequently, the
 2457 MaC uses a trusted PASE session for reading the IDevID of the KNX IoT device.
- 2458 • If supported by both peers, then the MaC starts a (D)TLS session and uses the IDevID for
 2459 authentication, and configures OSCORE Access Tokens for the tool key ("if.sec") and runtime
 2460 keys ("if.s", "if.p", "if.d", etc.).



2461

2462

Figure 21 – OSCORE Access Token Configuration

2463 3.6.2 OSCORE Key Configuration Resource Object

2464 This clause defines how to derive a security context based on a shared master secret and a set of other
 2465 parameters established between all KNX IoT devices that exchange data. The derivation of the Sender
 2466 Key, Recipient Key, and Common IV SHALL be done according to [RFC8613] clause 3.2. In the case of
 2467 pre-shared keys, the proof-of-possession key (runtime key), provisioned from the MaC MAY, is used
 2468 directly as a master secret in OSCORE. If OSCORE is used directly with the symmetric proof-of-
 2469 possession keys as the master secret, then the MaC SHALL provision the master secret ("ms"), the
 2470 context ID, and the client ID. Additionally, the MaC MAY provision the "hkdf", "alg", or "salt"
 2471 parameter. If these parameters are omitted, the default values are used as defined in [RFC8613]
 2472 clause 3.2.

2473 For KNX IoT OSCORE access rights configuration, the CWT format, based on [RFC9203], contains the
 2474 necessary parameters in the "cnf" claim. Table 50 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL
 2475 ("O") attributes and defines the CBOR mapping for the OSCORE_Security_Context. MANDATORY
 2476 ("M") attributes SHALL be present in the message, and OPTIONAL ("O") may be present in the
 2477 message, but the attributes SHALL be supported on the device

2478

Table 50 – Members in the "cnf"-claim

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|-------------|----------|-------------|------------|--|
| "id" | 0 | byte string | M | OSCORE input material identifier (osc-id maximum length: 7 bytes). The id SHALL NOT be an empty byte string (""). |
| "version" | 1 | unsigned | O | OSCORE Version. |
| "ms" | 2 | byte string | M | master secret; SHALL be the PSK (32 bytes). |
| "hkdf" | 3 | unsigned | O | KDF (Key Derivation Function algorithm); Default SHALL be HKDF SHA-256 [RFC5869]. |
| "alg" | 4 | unsigned | O | AEAD algorithm; SHALL be set to the value from [RFC8152]. The default is AES-CCM-16-64-128 (COSE algorithm encoding: 10). |
| "salt" | 5 | byte string | O | salt; Default SHALL be an empty byte string. |
| "contextId" | 6 | byte string | (M) | The context ID SHALL be used as "kid_context" in the OSCORE message (maximum length: 3 bytes); The context ID is used to distinguish security contexts (source device) on the receiver. The context ID is MANDATORY on the sending device but SHALL be ignored or omitted in the access token on the receiving device. |

2479

2480 The MaC SHALL send a POST request to "auth/at" to configure tokens on a KNX IoT device. The
 2481 payload SHALL be a CBOR map. The configuration request to the KNX IoT device SHALL be secured
 2482 either with CoAP over (D)TLS (if supported by the device) or OSCORE. The scope attribute can be
 2483 omitted if all Points of the assigned IPv6 multicast address ("serverId") use the same access token.
 2484 However, if a *Group Address* is configured with an individual token, then the scope SHALL be
 2485 configured with the *Group Address* as defined in clause 2.5.9, "S-Mode Messaging Resource (.knx)". A
 2486 Group Message with a configured security context SHALL be protected by OSCORE for multicast and
 2487 unicast (with and without (D)TLS).

2488

2489 Table 51 specifies MANDATORY ("M") OSCORE resources and the corresponding resource path on a
 KNX IoT device.

2490

Table 51 – OSCORE configuration resources

| Resource path | Resource Types (rt) | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|---------------------|--------|--------|---------|--|---|
| auth/at | NA | cbor | POST | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 0: "oc7", 38: 2, 9: [<ga>], 8: { 4: { 4: 10, 0: "<osc-id>", 2: "<ms>" }}} | OSCORE multicast credentials config. For KNX Group communication. |
| | | | | | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 0: "oc5bhk", 38: 2, 9: [<ga>], 8: { 4: { 4: 10, 0: "<osc-id>", 2: "<ms>" }}} | OSCORE unicast credentials config. For KNX Group Communication. However, it is also possible to configure a token for a Point subscription ("scope": ["<PointInterface>"]) |

2491

2492 3.6.3 Password Authenticated Access Token Enrollment

2493 3.6.3.1 Introduction

2494 This clause describes an access token configuration procedure using a shared password as an
2495 authentication code for devices in the default configuration state. At the end of the procedure, the KNX
2496 IoT device has received credentials (tool key="if.sec") allowing for further access tokens configuration.

2497 PAKE protocols allow two or more entities to authenticate each other and create an encrypted channel for
2498 further communication. The security protocols rely on an out-of-band secret (e.g., password from a
2499 printed QR code or retrieved via NFC interface from KNX IoT device) to authenticate the exchanges. The
2500 password is never sent, but parties in the exchange can prove possession of the shared password and thus
2501 authenticate. When both parties have computed the same PASE session key, it is used to symmetrically
2502 encrypt all data in subsequent OSCORE messages of the same PASE session.

2503 SPAKE2+ [13] is an augmented Password Authenticated Key Exchange (PAKE) protocol where only one
 2504 party directly uses the password. The other party may not know the password but only stores a derivative
 2505 of the password. The party using the password directly typically is the initiator/client (e.g., MaC) and acts
 2506 as a prover. In contrast, the other party is a server and acts as a verifier (KNX IoT device).

2507 SPAKE2+ is agnostic to the used transport protocol (e.g., Bluetooth, TCP, etc.). The following clause
 2508 describes how CoAP is used as the SPAKE2+ transport protocol.

2509 3.6.3.2 PASE Resource Object

2510 PAKE key enrollment uses CoAP [RFC7252] as a reliable transport protocol and OSCORE [RFC8613]
 2511 for encryption. It is RECOMMENDED to carry messages in confirmed messages, mainly if
 2512 fragmentation is used. Table 52 defines JSON keys and the CBOR mapping for CoAP request and
 2513 response objects to `"/.well-known/knx/spake"`.

2514 Table 52 defines the MANDATORY ("M") attributes the client and the server SHALL support.

2515 **Table 52 – JSON keys and the CBOR mapping**

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|------------|----------|-------------|----------|--|
| "id" | 0 | text string | M | Responder ID context as ASCII string of numbers and lowercase letters (maximum osc-id length: 7 bytes). The id SHALL NOT be an empty text string (""). |
| "salt" | 5 | byte string | M | salt: A random value of at least 16 bytes and at most 32 bytes. |
| "shareP" | 10 | byte string | M | shareP: The SPAKE2+ contribution in uncompressed public key format 32 bytes). |
| "shareV" | 11 | byte string | M | shareV: The SPAKE2+ contribution in uncompressed public key format. |
| "pbkdf2" | 12 | map | M | <i>PBKDF2</i> : Password-Based Key Derivation Function 2 |
| "confirmV" | 13 | byte string | M | confirmV: The key confirmation. |
| "confirmP" | 14 | byte string | M | confirmP: The key confirmation. |
| "rnd" | 15 | byte string | M | Random value (32 byte) |
| "it" | 16 | unsigned | M | PBKDF Iterations: An integer value specifying the number of iterations (see clause 3.6.6.4, "SPAKE2+ Enrollment Configurations"). |

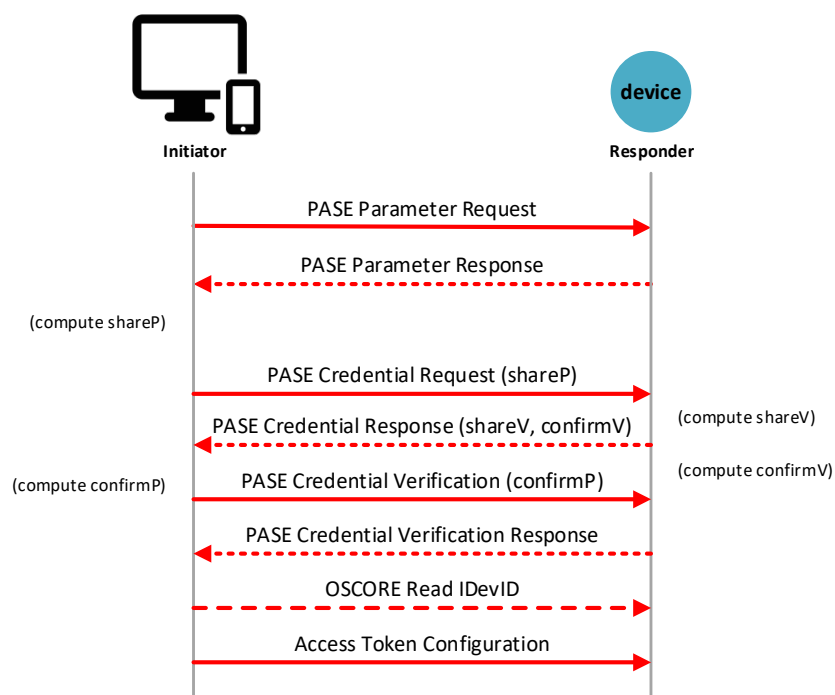
2516

2517 3.6.3.3 Device Authentication with SPAKE2+ over CoAP

2518 The following figure depicts an Initiator acting as a CoAP client and the Responder acting as a CoAP
 2519 server. The Password Authenticated Session Establishment (PASE) is used for generating the OSCORE
 2520 master secret. Every KNX IoT device SHALL have a unique password that is used as proof of possession
 2521 in the PASE flow (see clause 3.6.6.6 "Password").

2522 The Initiator (e.g., MaC) initiates the PASE Parameter exchange with the Responder (KNX IoT device).
 2523 In the response, the Responder sends an unencrypted salt to the verifier. This salt and the KNX IoT
 2524 device password are used from both peers as input for the key derivation function (see clause 3.6.6.2,
 2525 "Password-based Key Derivation Function (PBKDF)").

- 2526 The CoAP client SHALL send a POST request containing the SPAKE2+ [13] message 1 to a reserved
 2527 resource at the CoAP server (PASE Credential Request). If the KNX IoT device is in the default
 2528 configuration state, this message triggers the SPAKE2+ exchange on the CoAP server, which SHALL
 2529 reply with a "2.04 Changed" response containing the SPAKE2+ message 2 (PASE Credential Response).
- 2530 Finally, the SPAKE2+ message 3 (PASE Credential Verification) is sent by the CoAP client in a CoAP
 2531 POST request to the same resource used for the SPAKE2+ message 1.
- 2532 The Content-Format of these CoAP messages SHALL be set to "application/cbor".
- 2533 If the device onboarding with PASE fails after a predefined number of consecutive invalid access
 2534 attempts, e.g., wrong password, then the KNX IoT device SHALL block further attempts. The server
 2535 SHALL return response code "5.03 Service Unavailable" in the last response and SHALL use the Max-
 2536 Age option to indicate the number of seconds after which to retry. It is RECOMMENDED to block
 2537 device onboarding after ten (10) consecutive invalid attempts per minute. It MAY increase the timeout
 2538 with every failed retry but no longer than 5 minutes (see clause 3.6.6.6, "Password").



2539

2540

Figure 22 – Password Authenticated OSCORE Access Token Enrollment

2541 The PASE Parameter exchange SHALL contain the following attributes from Table 52 for the request:

- 2542
- rnd

2543 The PASE Parameter request SHALL contain a responder key ID for the temporary OSCORE access
 2544 token. The responder key ID in the request SHALL be the OSCORE input material identifier (osc-id) for
 2545 the following access token configuration.

- 2546
- id

2547 The PASE Parameter response SHALL contain the following attributes:

- 2548
- rnd

- 2549
- pbkdf2

- 2550
- it

- 2551
- salt

2552

PASE parameter exchange.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx/spake

(Accept: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

{ 0: "rkey", 15: h'3456...c45e' }

RES:

2.04 CHANGED (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

{ 15: h'8dfs...a7ad', 12: { 16: 1000, 5: h'98fa...fw54' } }

2553

2554 With the following message, the Initiator (e.g., MaC) responds with its public key shareV (see clause
 2555 3.6.3.3 "Device Authentication with SPAKE2+ over CoAP"). Both Responder (KNX IoT device) and
 2556 Initiator SHALL derive a shared secret to generate encryption and authentication keys. The Responder
 2557 SHALL send the verifier (Initiator) a key confirmation message containing confirmV so both parties can
 2558 confirm that they agree upon these shared secrets.

2559 The PASE Credential request SHALL contain the following attributes from Table 52:

- 2560 • shareP

2561 The PASE Credential response SHALL contain the following attributes:

- 2562 • shareV
- 2563 • confirmV

PASE credential exchange.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx/spake

(Accept: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

{ 10: h'b6b8...95c9' }

RES:

2.04 CHANGED (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

{ 11: h'9876...aa98', 13: h'a987...c3874' }

2564

2565 The Initiator (e.g., MaC) SHALL send to the Responder (KNX IoT device) a confirmation message
 2566 containing confirmP. The Initiator SHALL NOT send application data to the Responder until it has
 2567 received and verified the confirmation message. Key confirmation verification requires the recomputation
 2568 of confirmP or confirmV and checking for equality against that which was received (SPAKE2+ [13]
 2569 clause 4).

2570 The PASE Credential Verification request SHALL contain the following attributes from Table 52 in the
 2571 request:

- 2572 • confirmP

| |
|---|
| <p>PASE Credential Verification.</p> <p>REQ: POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx/spake (Accept: application/cbor (60)) Payload: { 14: h'8964...d887' }</p> <p>RES: 2.04 CHANGED</p> |
|---|

2573
 2574 As a result of the PASE credential exchange, each party can compute their sending and receiving keys.
 2575 The resulting shared symmetric secret K (Ke according to SPAKE2+ [13] clause 3.5) SHALL be used as
 2576 master secret ("ms") for operational OSCORE access token configuration.

2577 The following example shows the OSCORE access token configuration after PASE credential exchange.
 2578 This temporary PASE access token item is generated from the KNX IoT device and SHALL be deleted
 2579 from the device as soon as the token expires. This access token grants access to the Initiator with the
 2580 shared secret K (responder key) from the previous PASE session. Only one PASE responder key is valid
 2581 at a time.

2582 The access token "id" and the OSCORE input material identifier (osc-id) SHALL be taken from the
 2583 PASE parameter exchange resource object "id". With this, the MaC can delete the temporary PASE
 2584 access token with a DELETE request to, for example, "/auth/at/rkey" after configuring a new access token
 2585 with the tool key.

2586 The Initiator with the PASE responder key can configure additional operational access tokens for a
 2587 limited time.

2588 A KNX IoT device SHALL stop access token enrollment after a specified period (e.g., 5 min) if the
 2589 SPAKE2+ session establishment has not been concluded. It is RECOMMENDED that the temporary
 2590 PASE access token and the corresponding responder key gets invalid after a device-specific timeout.

Table 53 – Access token example after PASE Credential Exchange

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|--------------------|-----------------|--------|--------|----------|--|--|
| auth/at/{token-id} | :dpt.swor | cbor | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 0: "rkey", 38: 255, 9: ["if.sec"], 8: { 4: { 4: 10, 0: h'726b6579', 2: "<Derived shared secret K from PASE>" }}} | The PASE-based access token (profile: coap_pase) is only applicable for "scope": ["if.sec"]. This OSCORE access token with a pre-shared key is used for further access token configurations. In this example, the device has internally added a token to the access control list with "rkey" for the key IDs from the PASE parameter exchange. |

2592

2593 **3.6.3.4 Access Token Configuration**

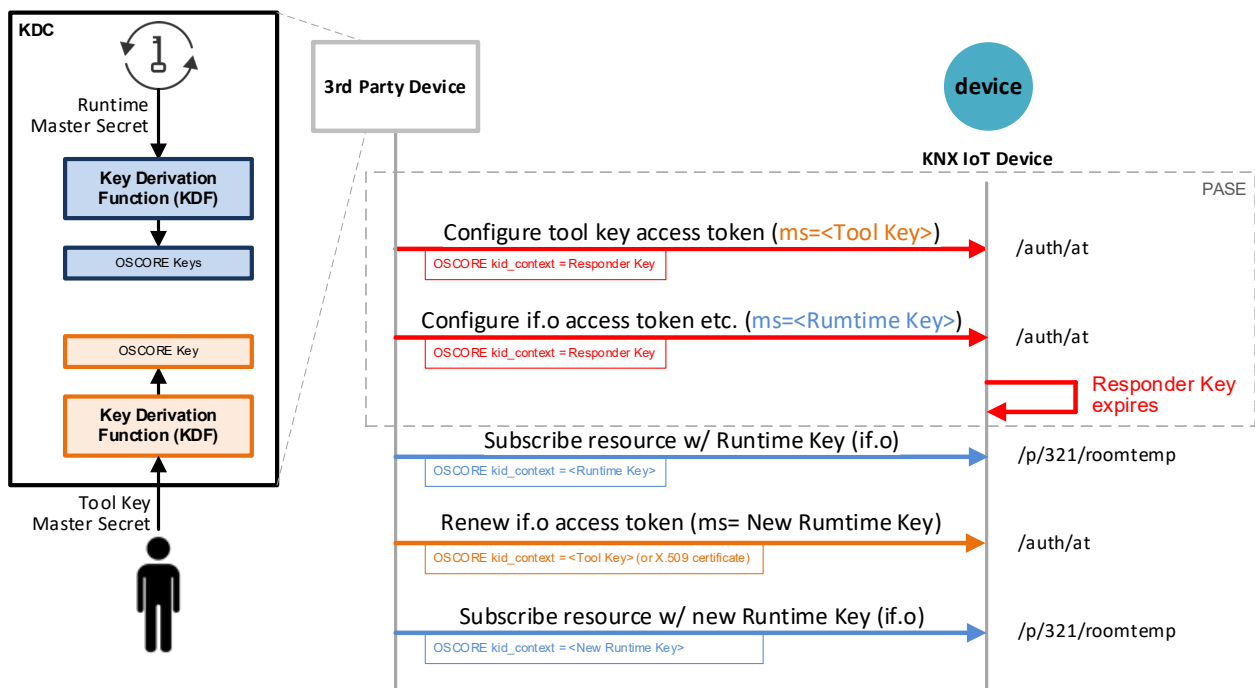
2594 This clause describes how a MaC or a 3rd Party device configures access tokens on a KNX IoT device
 2595 during commissioning (PAKE) and after commissioning. The precondition is that the MaC or the 3rd
 2596 Party device has access to the corresponding credentials in the KDC service (Key Distribution Center).

2597 The key management of a KDC is out-of-scope of this document and is the network administrator's
 2598 responsibility. However, it is RECOMMENDED to have a Tool Master Key for security configuration
 2599 (access scope = "if.sec") and a Runtime Master Key. The individual tool and runtime keys are derived
 2600 from the Master secret (see clause 3.6.6.1 "Key Derivation Function") for each KNX IoT device that the
 2601 3rd Party device integrates. The Master Secret SHOULD be accessible to the network administrator. The
 2602 Master Secret is important in case the 3rd Party gets replaced by a new device. With the Master Secret, the
 2603 new 3rd Party device can bootstrap all existing KNX IoT devices and configure new runtime keys. The
 2604 Runtime Master Key MAY be generated device internally and is only known by the 3rd Party device.

2605 If both the 3rd Party device and the KNX IoT device support (D)TLS, then it is RECOMMENDED to
 2606 configure the LDevID of the 3rd Party device in the access token with "if.sec" access scope. In this case,
 2607 the Master Secret, or rather the tool key, gets replaced by an X.509 certificate.

2608 3.6.3.4.1 Temporary Access Token Configuration (Responder Key)

2609 The 3rd Party device integrates a KNX IoT device in the following example. The 3rd Party device
 2610 configures access tokens (incl. pre-shared keys) and, in addition, can read, write and subscribe to
 2611 application data (e.g., room temperature value) later after commissioning.



2612 **Figure 23 – Access Token Configuration (Pub/Sub)**

2614 The sequence diagram above continues with an existing PASE session (valid responder key). The Initiator
 2615 (3rd Party device) can only configure access tokens since the access token scope of the PASE responder
 2616 key SHALL be limited to "if.sec".

2617 The following CoAP POST example shows how the Initiator configures a new operational OSCORE
 2618 access token for the "if.sec" scope (tool key).

2619 The KNX IoT device SHALL accept the first OSCORE unicast request from an unsynchronized client.
2620 However, the client SHALL create a randomized sequence number for the first request. The sequence
2621 number from the client SHALL be deleted with the PASE security context when the PASE access token
2622 expires or gets deleted. This is an exception to the general rule defined in clause 3.6.4, "Message Replay
2623 Protection".

2624 The CoAP message SHALL contain the PASE "id" as "kid". Before accepting the request, the Responder
2625 (KNX IoT device) SHALL check the corresponding credentials. At least one operational access token
2626 configuration SHALL contain the "if.sec" scope; otherwise, access token changes or renewals are
2627 impossible as soon as the PASE responder key expires.

2628 The client in the following example uses the kid=h'726b6579'="rkey" (osc-id) and the PASE responder
2629 key ms=<derived shared secret K from PASE> to configure a new access token (tool key) containing a
2630 reference to an X.509 certificate:

Configure tool key access token (ms=<tool key>) for an X.509 certificate.

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/auth/at
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid((h'726b6579'))))

Payload:

```
{
  0: "12345",           //id
  9: ["if.sec"],       //scope
  2: "<kdc-id.knx.local>", //sub
  38: 254,             //profile: coap_tls
  8: {                 //cnf
    2: "<trust list [X.509]fingerprint>" } //kid
}
```

2631
2632 The initiator MAY configure additional runtime keys (configure "if.o" access token) with the same PASE
2633 responder key session.

2634 The previous example shows an X.509 certificate-based trust to the entity that hosts the KDC. If both
2635 peers support (D)TLS, then the Initiator SHOULD configure the "coap_tls" or "coap_dtls" profile for
2636 X.509 certificate-based mutual authorization for the tool key (see clause 3.5.4 "Device Access Control
2637 List Resource (auth/at)").

2638 However, it is also possible to configure a coap_oscore profile for the tool key. Depending on local
2639 security requirements, the local network administrator has to decide whether to use an X.509 certificate or
2640 a pre-shared key for the tool key.

2641 The client in the following example uses again the kid=h'726b6579'="rkey" (osc-id) and the PASE
2642 responder key ms=<derived shared secret K from PASE> to configure further access tokens with a new
2643 <osc-id>:

Configure tool key access token (ms=<tool key>) with an OSCORE pre-shared key.

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/auth/at
 (Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid((h'726b6579')))

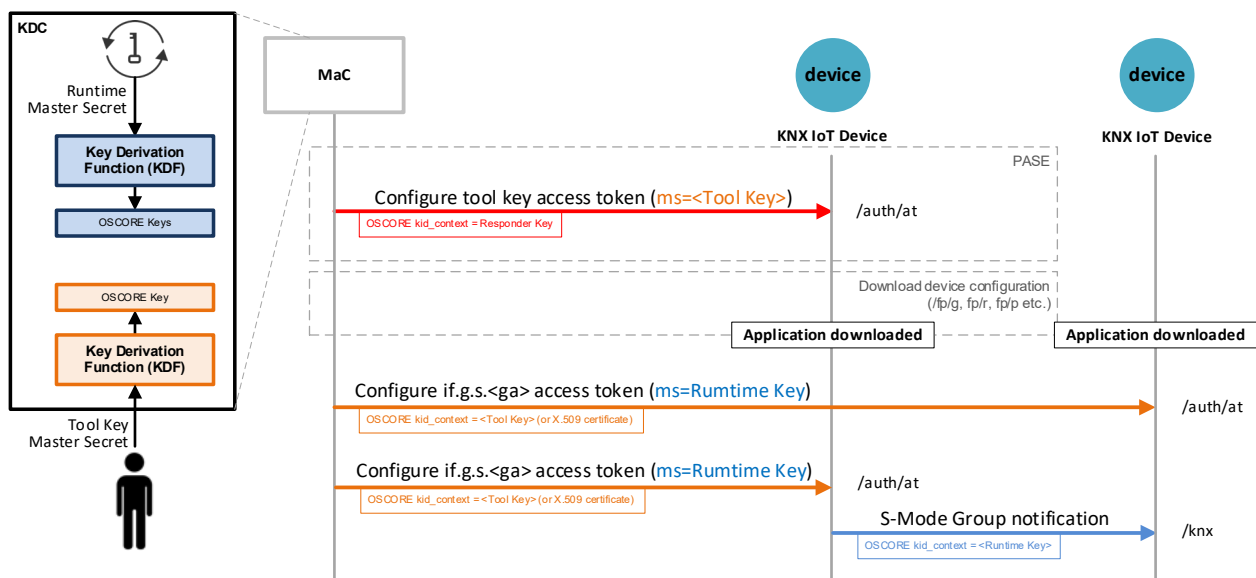
Payload:

```
{
  0: "23451a",           //id
  38: 2,                //profile: coap_oscure
  9: ["if.sec"],       //scope
  8: {                  //cnf
  4: {                  //osc
  4: 10,                //alg: AES-CCM-16-64-128
  0: "<osc-id>",        //id
  2: "ca5...4dd43e4c" //ms
  }}}}
```

2644

2645 3.6.3.4.2 Access Token for Group Communication

2646 The following example shows a MaC configuring access tokens on two KNX IoT devices that want to
 2647 exchange S-Mode group notifications. Hence, the MaC SHALL configure the same runtime key on all
 2648 KNX IoT devices that send or receive messages with a particular *Group Address*. Each *Group Address* in
 2649 the access token SHOULD have a corresponding *Group Address* configuration in the Function Point
 2650 Table.



2651

2652 **Figure 24 – Access Token Configuration (Group Communication)**

2653 An access token for a *Group Address* contains a specific scope identifier, as shown in the following table.
 2654 It is an extension of the previous example with a 3rd Party device.

2655 If a POST request successfully creates a new access token, the server SHALL return a "2.01 Created"
 2656 response code. If an access token exists and the update is successful, the server SHALL return a "2.04
 2657 Changed" response code with no response document. A valid access token item SHALL contain all
 2658 MANDATORY members as defined in clause 3.5.4.2. Partial update of access token items SHALL be
 2659 supported, for example, for key renewal.

2660 The client in the following example uses the newly configured kid and the ms=<tool key> from the
2661 previous example to configure further access tokens with a new <osc-id>.

Configure <ga> access token (ms=<runtime key>).

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/auth/at
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
{
  0: "345612",           //id
  38: 2,                //profile: coap_oscure
  9: [1, 2, 3, 4],     //scope
  8: {                  //cnf
  4: {                  //osc
  4: 10,                //alg: AES-CCM-16-64-128
  0: "<osc-id>",        //id
  2: "ca5...4dd43e4c" //ms
  }
  }
}
```

2662

2663 3.6.3.5 Device Handover

2664 A device handover allows a new KNX IoT Client to get admin rights ("if.sec") to configure new access
2665 tokens. This method can be used if an already configured KNX IoT device needs to be integrated into
2666 another system.

2667 The MaC or an existing KNX IoT Client with admin rights ("if.sec") can instruct a KNX IoT device to
2668 open a PASE enrollment window for a predefined time. The MaC SHALL generate a new temporary
2669 random password according to clause 3.6.6.6. The new KNX IoT Client gets the temporary password
2670 from the MaC and uses the password for a new PASE enrollment, according to 3.6.3.

2671 User interfaces such as a local display or manufacturer-specific tools are other possible mechanisms to get
2672 a temporary password from a KNX IoT device to open a PASE enrollment window.

MaC configures a temporary password for PASE enrollment, valid for 60 seconds.

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx/spake
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60)), OSCORE(code(PUT), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
{ 8: "ABCD1234", 9: 60 }
```

RES:

2.04 CHANGED

2673 If the KNX IoT device does not support the configuration of new passwords, the device SHALL return a
2674 "4.00 Bad Request" response code.
2675

2676 If a member is a market as OPTIONAL, then a client can omit the member in the request, However, the
2677 server SHALL support the member handling.

2678

Table 54 – SPAKE2+ Handover Password JSON keys and the CBOR mapping

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|----------|----------|-------------|----------|---|
| "pw" | 8 | byte string | M | The temporary password for PAKE key enrollment. In the case the "pw" value is an empty string "", the KNX IoT device SHALL reuse the default PASE password, |
| "time" | 9 | unsigned | O | Password validity time in seconds. Default timeout, if omitted in the request, SHALL be 120 sec. Maximum timeout: 60 min. |

2679

2680 3.6.4 Message Replay Protection

2681 A KNX IoT device receiving an OSCORE request SHALL implement replay protection and validate
2682 message freshness according to [RFC8613] clause 7.4.

2683 The general rule is that the first time a server receives an OSCORE unicast GET, DELETE, PUT, or
2684 POST request from an unsynchronized client, the server SHALL respond with an OSCORE protected
2685 CoAP response code "4.01 Unauthorized" with an Echo option according to [RFC9175] clause 2.3.

2686 This is due to the replay window not yet being set up by the receiving KNX IoT device. Upon receiving a
2687 "4.01 Unauthorized" response code with the Echo option, the client SHOULD resend the original request
2688 by adding the Echo option with the received Echo option value.

2689 The server SHALL NOT check the sequence number if an Echo option is present. This allows a client to
2690 update its security context with the server if the server has lost the sequence number. However, the client
2691 can use the Echo option value from the server only once with an invalid sequence number. Otherwise, the
2692 server responds with a new Echo option.

2693 KNX IoT devices MAY trust the first authenticated multicast message from an unsynchronized peer by
2694 default, which is configurable (see clause 3.6.4.1.3).

2695 3.6.4.1.1 Sender Security Context

2696 A receiving KNX IoT device SHALL store received OSCORE message sequence numbers from each
2697 publishing sender security context, so that replay protection is enabled after receiving the first message.
2698 This approach has lower latency for less security-sensitive applications such as lighting. However, this
2699 method is susceptible to accepting a replayed message after a device reboot (see clause 3.6.4.1.3).

2700 The OSCORE message sequence number and replay window SHALL be maintained with the configured
2701 security context (configured access token = pre-shared key), the OSCORE sender "kid", and the
2702 "kid_context".

2703 The sending KNX IoT device (Publisher or client) SHALL use the OSCORE input material identifier
2704 (osc-id) and conextId from the access token for the OSCORE "kid" and the "kid_context" for unicast and
2705 multicast requests. The "kid_context" is used on the receiving device to distinguish security contexts.
2706 Therefore, the "kid_context" SHALL differ among KNX IoT devices with the same OSCORE
2707 credentials.

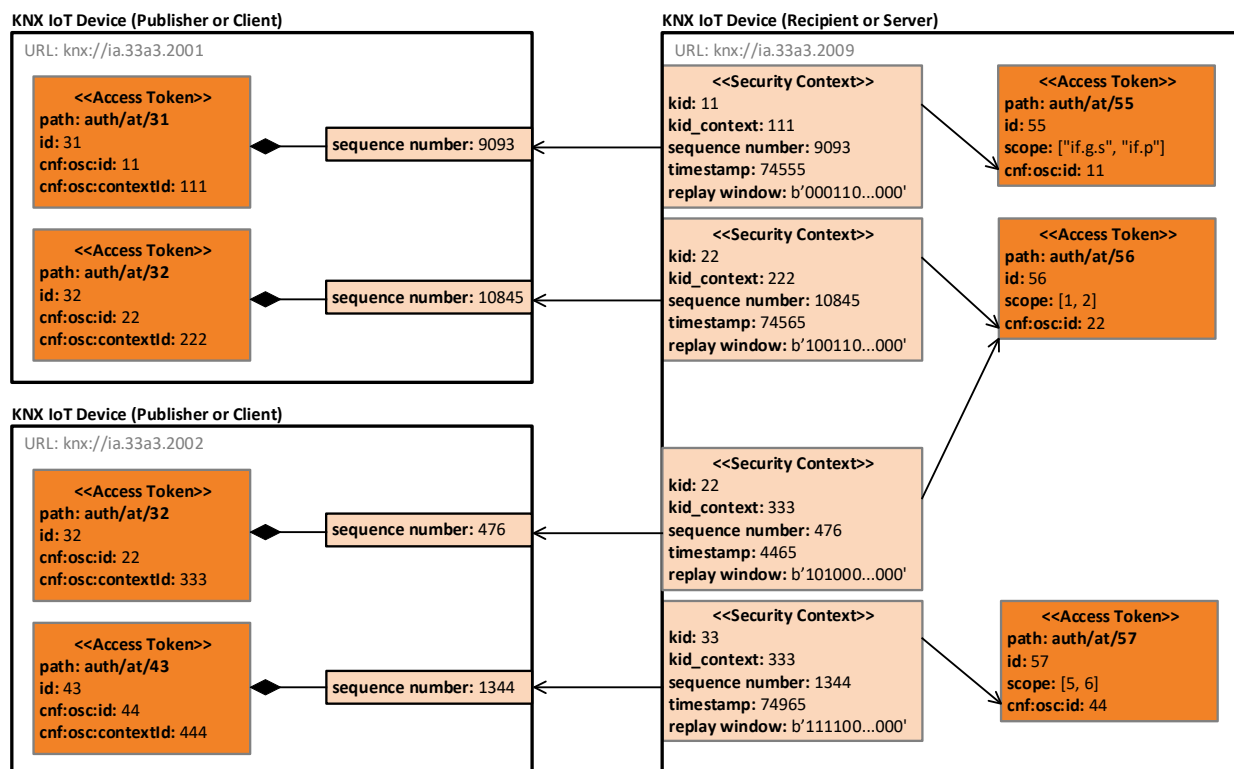


Figure 25 – Security Context

2708
2709

2710 3.6.4.1.2 Message Sequence Number

2711 The receiving KNX IoT device (Recipient or server) SHALL persist per publishing sender security
2712 context the received OSCORE message sequence number into non-volatile memory. If this is not
2713 possible, the device MAY synchronize the OSCORE message sequence number from configured peers
2714 (e.g., subscriptions or Function Point Publisher Table) based on a challenge-response mechanism.

2715 A KNX IoT device SHALL support a list for S-Mode security context sequence number counters and, in
2716 addition, an independent list for unicast read/write/subscription sequence number counters.

2717 The MaC SHALL NOT configure more sender security contexts than the maximal supported number of
2718 S-Mode sequence number counters of the sending KNX IoT device.

2719 It is RECOMMENDED to support a sequence number counter for each subscription.

2720 The KNX IoT device that sends an OSCORE message (unicast or multicast) SHALL ensure that the
2721 sequence counter does not roll back and SHALL persist that the sequence number counter in non-volatile
2722 memory for each security context. This means the sequence counter SHALL be strictly monotonic
2723 increasing for a given sender security context after the device restart.

2724 If the sender sequence number exceeds the maximum configured value, the endpoint SHOULD continue
2725 with 0. This definition contrasts with [RFC8613] clause 7.2.1. However, if a KDC is present in the
2726 system, it SHALL configure a new security context before this happens. The maximum sequence counter
2727 SHALL be $0xFFFF\ FFFF = 2^{32}-1$ (1 message per second = ~ 138 years).

2728 A KNX IoT device SHALL generate a response to an OSCORE unicast request according to [RFC8613]
2729 clause 8.3 and reuse the sequence number from the sender. This reduces the consumption of sequence
2730 numbers on the responding device.

2731 The receiving device SHALL check the OSCORE message sequence counter with the configured replay
2732 window (min = last received message + 1, max = last received message + configuration in
2733 auth/o/replwdo).

2734 3.6.4.1.3 Sequence Number Synchronization

2735 The sequence number synchronization mechanism MAY be used in combination with multicast runtime
2736 communication to update the security context sequence number.

2737 When receiving a multicast request from a Publisher for the first time or the receiving device has lost
2738 synchronization, e.g., after reboot, the receiving device is not synchronized with the Publisher's sender
2739 sequence number and cannot verify if a request is fresh.

2740 More security-sensitive applications MAY want to synchronize the sequence number before processing
2741 the OSCORE message. However, this is an application-specific configuration that can generate high
2742 communication traffic and drain battery capacity (e.g., light switch) and, therefore, SHALL be
2743 configurable with the "sns" metadata value (see clause 2.5.11.3, "Metadata Query Parameter "m").

2744 If the application requires message freshness, then the receiving device SHALL (re-)synchronize the
2745 Publisher's sender sequence number based on the CoAP Echo approach described in [RFC9175] clause
2746 2.3. A Publisher KNX IoT device SHALL support a challenge-response based on the Echo option if a
2747 peer requests it.

2748 A KNX IoT device SHALL use the same credentials for the challenge-response request that initially
2749 triggered the (re-)synchronization. KNX IoT devices SHALL accept OSCORE message sequence number
2750 synchronization requests from all peers that use credentials (sender context) configured in the access
2751 control list (see clause 3.5.4 "Device Access Control List").

Sequence number synchronization.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-multicast}/.knx

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>),kid_context(<contextID>),
sequence-number(10)))

Payload:

{ 4: <KNX Individual Address>, 5: { 6: <st>, 7: <ga>, 1: <value> } }

RES:

4.01 UNAUTHORIZED (Echo: 1234)

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.knx

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), Echo(1234), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>),
kid_context(<contextID>), sequence-number(10)))

Payload:

{ 4: <KNX Individual Address>, 5: { 6: <st>, 7: <ga>, 1: <value> } }

2752 The following sequence diagram shows a sequence number synchronization example after receiving a
2753 multicast OSCORE message.
2754

2755 Upon receiving a request from a particular Publisher for the first time, the receiving device processes the
2756 message. Still, it does not deliver it to the application, even if it is valid. Instead, the receiving device
2757 replies with a random delay to the Publisher with an OSCORE protected "4.01 Unauthorized" response
2758 code, including only the Echo option value. This response SHALL be delayed (jitter) to avoid network
2759 congestion (see Table 55, "auth/o/osndelay").

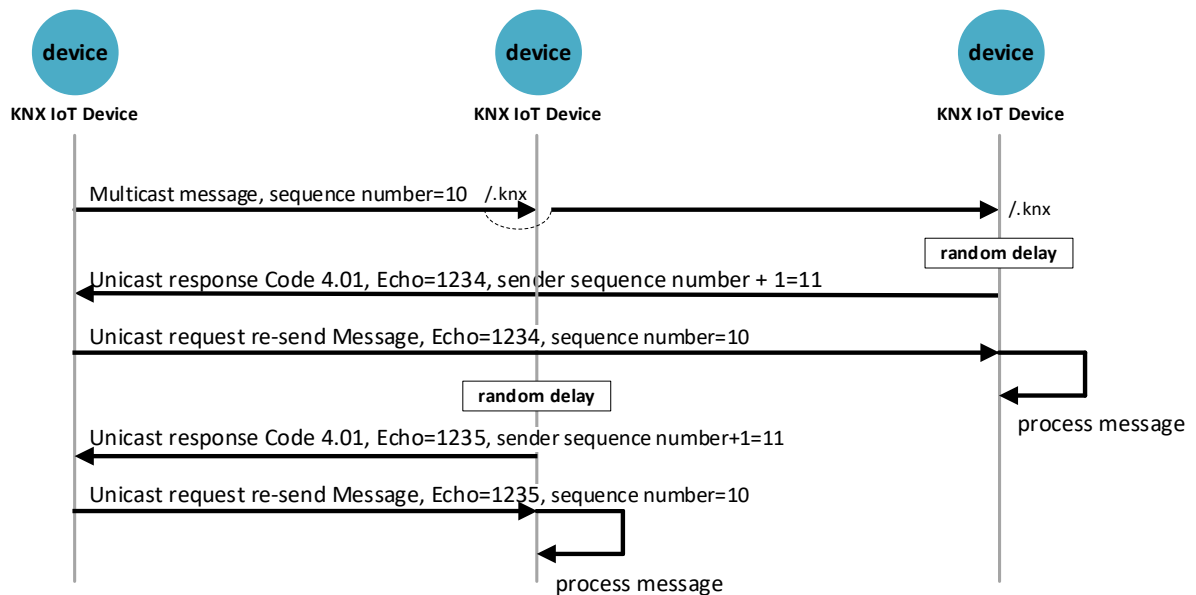
2760 Since this response is protected with the security context used in the previous request, the Publisher will
2761 consider the response valid upon successfully decrypting and verifying it.

2762 Suppose the Publisher receives a "4.01 Unauthorized" response code that includes an Echo option and
 2763 originates from a verified peer. In that case, it SHALL re-send an unconfirmed unicast echoing request to
 2764 the same peer. The echoing message SHALL contain the sequence number previously used in the latest
 2765 multicast message and the Echo option value from the response. The Publisher SHALL NOT send the
 2766 request, including the Echo option, over multicast.

2767 If other devices also want to (re-)synchronize with the same Publisher. The publishing device SHALL
 2768 reuse the same sequence number from the latest multicast notification request in combination with the
 2769 Echo option value from the corresponding device.

2770 The Publisher maybe sends further multicast messages before echoing the "4.01 Unauthorized" response
 2771 code from the receiving KNX IoT device, for example, since the response was delayed (jitter) on the
 2772 receiving device. The Publisher SHALL take the latest (highest) sequence number used in the last
 2773 multicast message for the unicast echoing message. The Recipient KNX IoT device SHALL discard
 2774 duplicate messages before processing the message in the application.

2775 If the KNX IoT device does not reply, the Publisher SHOULD wait for at least 2000 milliseconds + sleep
 2776 cycle (non-sleepy devices = 0, sleepy devices = see clause 2.6.1.2.4.1) before the next retry.



2777

2778

Figure 26 – OSCORE Sequence Number Synchronization

2779 Table 55 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") resources for sequence number synchronization on a KNX
 2780 IoT device.

2781

Table 55 – Resources for sequence number synchronization

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|----------------|-----------------------|--------|------------|----------|--|--|
| auth/o/replwdo | :dpt.value2 uCount | cbor | GET PUT | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 32 } | The replay window is the maximum number of previously processed messages to accept from a given device and credential. |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|------------------|---------------------|--------|------------|----------|--|---|
| auth/0/osn delay | :dpt.timePeriodMsec | cbor | GET PUT | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 1000 } | Maximum delay (jitter) in milliseconds before sending a read message counter request (e.g., after receiving a multicast message). The default value is 1000 ms. |

2782

2783 3.6.5 Message Processing

2784 This clause describes the processing of OSCORE request and response messages in the context of KNX
2785 IoT according to [RFC8613].

2786 If a KNX IoT device wants to send a request message, the client SHALL perform the following steps to
2787 create an OSCORE request:

- 2788 • The sending KNX IoT device (client) queries the Function Point Table and SHALL use the
2789 configured access token for message encryption. The access token configuration for the OSCORE
2790 input material identifier (osc-id) SHALL be used for the OSCORE "kid", and the "contextID"
2791 SHALL be used for OSCORE "kid_context".
- 2792 • Process steps according to [RFC8613] clause 8.1.

2793 The receiving KNX IoT device (server) SHALL perform the following steps to validate the incoming
2794 OSCORE request:

- 2795 • The KNX IoT device queries the access control list to find the corresponding access token item.
2796 The following criteria SHALL be applied to find the corresponding access token:
 - 2797 ○ S-Mode unicast/multicast request: The access token OSCORE input material
2798 identifier (osc-id) SHALL correspond with the OSCORE "kid" in the request. The
2799 scope claim SHALL contain a *Group Address*.
 - 2800 ○ Point read/write/subscribe unicast request: The access token OSCORE input
2801 material identifier (osc-id) SHALL correspond with the OSCORE "kid" in the
2802 request. In addition, the scope claim SHALL contain an interface type configuration
2803 (see clause 2.5.3).
- 2804 • Process steps according to [RFC8613] clause 8.2.
- 2805 • The KNX IoT device SHALL validate permissions before accessing Points (see clause 3.5.3).

2806 In the case the KNX IoT device (server) sends a response message, the client SHALL perform the
2807 following steps to create an OSCORE response:

- 2808 • Process steps according to [RFC8613] clause 8.3. The KNX IoT device SHALL use the AEAD
2809 nonce from the request and SHALL NOT include Partial IV in the message.
- 2810 • Unicast response: Use the access token (credentials) from the request. The KNX IoT device
2811 SHALL use an empty byte string for the OSCORE sender ID (kid = h").

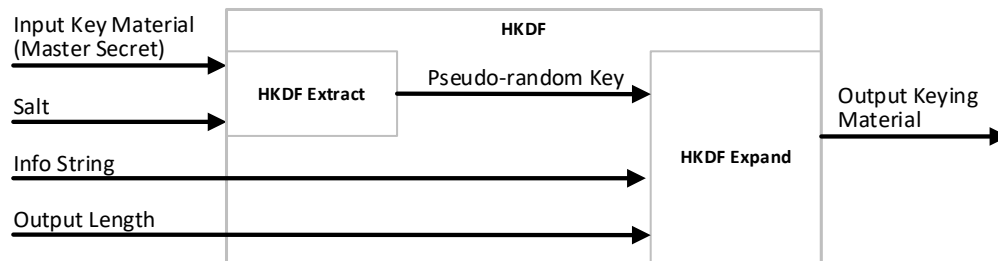
2812 The receiving KNX IoT device (client) SHALL perform the following steps to validate the incoming
2813 OSCORE response:

- 2814 • Unicast response: Access token SHALL contain the corresponding credentials that match the
2815 previous request message.
- 2816 • Process steps according to [RFC8613] clause 8.4.

2817 3.6.6 OSCORE Cipher Suites

2818 3.6.6.1 Key Derivation Function

2819 A Key derivation function derives several secrets from one secret, the so-called Master Secret. KNX IoT
 2820 devices SHALL support HKDF with SHA-256 according to clause 4.1 option 2 [NIST 800-56C] as a
 2821 simple deterministic key derivation function based on the HMAC message authentication code.



2822
2823 **Figure 27 – HKDF**

2824 HKDF denotes the composition of the expand and extract functions as defined in [RFC5869], and the
 2825 Master Secret is used as Input Key Material. The Master Secret ("ms" in table 3.6.2 "OSCORE Key
 2826 Configuration Resource Object") SHALL be a random value of at least 16 bytes and, at most, 32 bytes.

2827 The OSCORE security context parameters Sender Key, Recipient Key, and Common IV SHALL be
 2828 derived from the HKDF input parameter. The Info String provides information to identify the security
 2829 context. The Info String SHALL be a CBOR array according to [RFC8613] clause 3.2.1.

2830 3.6.6.2 Password-based Key Derivation Function (PBKDF)

2831 In practice, there is no significant difference between HKDF and PBKDF. HKDF has been explicitly
 2832 designed for non-password-based key derivation, whereas using PBKDF2 with an iteration count is
 2833 formally outside of the original HKDF parameters.

2834 PBKDF2 [RFC2898] is a simple cryptographic key derivation function resistant to dictionary attacks and
 2835 rainbow table attacks. PBKDF2 applies a pseudorandom function, such as a hash-based message
 2836 authentication code (HMAC), to the input password along with a salt value and repeats the process many
 2837 times to produce a derived key, which can then be used as a cryptographic key in subsequent operations.

2838 The following list defines the MANDATORY cipher suites for the PASE security context of KNX IoT
 2839 devices:

- 2840 • PBKDF2 random value size: 32 bytes (secure random number)
- 2841 • Salt: Device-specific random value of at least 16 bytes and at most 32 bytes.
- 2842 • Count (PBKDF iterations): min=1000 and max=100000
- 2843 • Total output length for PASE PBKDF2 (dkLen) = 40 + 40 bytes (w0s || w1s) = 80 bytes.

2844 3.6.6.3 OSCORE Security Context

2845 KNX IoT devices that exchange messages need a shared security context for encryption and decryption
 2846 on both sides. The OSCORE security context [RFC8613] defines a set of parameters necessary to perform
 2847 cryptographic operations. The following list defines the MANDATORY cipher suites for the OSCORE
 2848 security context of KNX IoT devices:

- 2849 • AEAD Algorithm: AES-CCM-16-64-128
- 2850 • Key Derivation Function: HKDF SHA-256 (see clause 3.6.6.1)

2851 **3.6.6.4 SPAKE2+ Enrollment Configurations**

2852 This clause specifies SPAKE2+ configuration parameters for password-authenticated OSCORE access
2853 token enrollment. All KNX IoT devices supporting OSCORE access token enrollment SHALL support
2854 the following cipher suite according to SPAKE2+ [13]: SPAKE2+_P256_SHA256_HKDF_HMAC.

2855 It is assumed that the Initiator and the Responder know all relevant parameters (w0, key length L etc.)
2856 corresponding to the Password. The following list defines additional SPAKE2+ parameters such as
2857 elliptic curve points (M and N) etc.:

- 2858 • SPAKE M Constant SPAKE2+ [13]:
2859 0x04886e2f97ace46e55ba9dd7242579f2993b64e16ef3dcab95afd497333d8fa12f5ff355163e43ce
2860 224e0b0e65ff02ac8e5c7be09419c785e0ca547d55a12e2d20
- 2861 • Len(M): 65
- 2862 • SPAKE N Constant SPAKE2+ [13]:
2863 0x04d8bbd6c639c62937b04d997f38c3770719c629d7014d49a24b4f98baa1292b4907d60aa6bfad
2864 e45008a636337f5168c64d9bd36034808cd564490b1e656edbe7
- 2865 • Len(N): 65
- 2866 • Context: knxpase
- 2867 • idProver SPAKE2+ [13]: Len(idProver) = 0x0000000000000000
- 2868 • idVerifier SPAKE2+ [13]: Len(idVerifier) = 0x0000000000000000

2869

2870 The method for computing w0s and w1s SHALL be as follows:

2871 $w0s || w1s = \text{PBKDF}(\text{len}(\text{password}) || \text{password} || \text{len}(\text{idProver}) || \text{len}(\text{idVerifier}))$

2872 **3.6.6.5 Transcript Computation (TT)**

2873 The protocol transcript (TT) is known by the Initiator and the Responder. Both parties use the TT to
2874 derive the shared symmetric key according to SPAKE2+ [13] clause 3.3.

2875 The idProvider and the idVerifier are unknown during the PASE enrollment. Therefore, an empty octet
2876 string represented as an eight-byte little-endian number (0x0000000000000000) for idProver and
2877 idVerifier SHALL be used to indicate that no identities are present.

2878 After exchanging PASE parameters, the Initiator and the Responder can compute Z and V, which are
2879 known values on both sides.

The following example depicts the protocol transcript encoding for the PASE enrollment.

```

TT =
len(Context) || knxpase ||
0x0000000000000000 ||
0x0000000000000000 ||
len(M)      ||
0x04886e2f97ace46e55ba9dd7242579f2993b64e16ef3dcab95afd497333d8fa12f5ff355163e43ce224e0
b0e65ff02ac8e5c7be09419c785e0ca547d55a12e2d20 ||
len(N)      ||
0x04d8bbd6c639c62937b04d997f38c3770719c629d7014d49a24b4f98baa1292b4907d60aa6bfade4500
8a636337f5168c64d9bd36034808cd564490b1e656edbe7 ||
len(shareP) || shareP ||
len(shareV) || shareV ||
len(Z)       || Z       ||
len(V)       || V       ||
len(w0)      || w0

```

2880

2881 3.6.6.6 Password

2882 This clause defines the password for the OSCORE token configuration procedure using a shared
 2883 password as proof of possession for KNX IoT devices in the default configuration state. The password
 2884 character definition serves the following purposes:

- 2885 • Minimize typing (or printing) errors since the Initiator (e.g., MaC) maybe allow users to enter a
 2886 password manually.
- 2887 • Alphanumeric encoding of passwords in QR codes.

2888 The following characters from an alphabet of 32 numbers and upper-case letters SHALL be used: [0, 1, 2,
 2889 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, J, K, L, M, N, P, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y]. Hence, the following
 2890 letters SHALL NOT be used for passwords: [I, O, Q, Z].

2891 The KNX IoT device password SHALL be composed of at least six characters but at most 32 on both
 2892 sides characters. To defend against brute-force attacks, the KNX IoT device SHALL limit authentication
 2893 retries after a predefined number of consecutive invalid access attempts, e.g., wrong password. The KNX
 2894 IoT device SHALL block further attempts. Authentication attempts SHALL be limited to at most one
 2895 attempt per 5 seconds on average. This requires over 2,5 years of effort for an attacker to have a 50 %
 2896 chance of success with a 6-character password.

2897 The password SHOULD only be accessible with some form of physical proximity as proof of possession
 2898 and SHALL NOT be accessible from a network interface (e.g., IP or CoAP). The password MAY be
 2899 printed on a device (e.g., static QR code) or MAY be conveyed via NFC. Passwords, for example, in QR
 2900 codes, SHOULD be hidden when installed. The password SHOULD be generated dynamically, for
 2901 example, in dynamic QR codes or NFC messages. However, NFC readout of a static password SHALL
 2902 NOT be possible if the commissioning mode is inactive, for example, when the device is in the
 2903 packaging.

2904 4 Software Update

2905 4.1 Introduction

2906 Software (firmware) updates are essential to keep installations healthy. The demand for shortening time to
2907 market for new applications and the accelerated pace of network and security standard evolution
2908 mandates the need for more frequent updates.

2909 The KNX IoT device software update functionality is designed to meet the specific needs of devices with
2910 limited computing power and memory. Software updates require power, so special consideration must be
2911 given to power management. In addition, data throughput will determine the time it takes for updates and
2912 the energy used to execute them.

2913 Therefore, image size is a key factor for a software update. KNX IoT supports an image-based software
2914 update strategy. This is achieved by encoding only the differences between a reference and a target
2915 image. For example, a package MAY contain only the communication stack that needs to be updated.
2916 However, the application software remains on the current version. This also enables the distribution of a
2917 software package to many of the same KNX IoT devices in an installation, for example, via multicast
2918 messages.

2919 After the software package download, the KNX IoT device notifies the Software Update Server that the
2920 download is complete and it is ready to apply the downloaded software package ("swu/state" =
2921 downloaded).

2922 In the last step, the Software Update Manager (e.g., MaC or Software Update Server) activates software
2923 download and updates the software.

2924 The Software Update Manager (initiator) decides which software update mode to apply and either
2925 provides the Software Update Client with an URL to perform the download from a Software Update
2926 Server or directly sends the software to the KNX IoT device. Hence, the software update process looks as
2927 follows:

- 2928 1. Software Update Manager activates software download.
- 2929 2. Software Update Client (KNX IoT device) downloads the software package from the Software
2930 Update Server (PULL), or the Software Update Client writes the software package to the KNX
2931 IoT device (PUSH).
- 2932 3. The KNX IoT device reports when finished.
- 2933 4. The Software Update Manager decides what to do next and, when needed, sends a request to the
2934 Software Update Client to perform the update.
- 2935 5. Software Update Client attempts to apply the software package and reports the status.

2936 4.2 Software Update Client Resource (swu)

2937 The Software Update Manager operates software updates on the Software Update Client *Functional Block*
2938 (SWU) which SHALL be implemented on a KNX IoT device.

2939 A Software Update Manager MAY configure the SWU to fetch (PULL) a software package from a
2940 dedicated server instead of pushing (PUSH) software packages to the KNX IoT device.

2941 If download speed is essential and the KNX IoT device supports additional protocols besides CoAP/UDP,
2942 then the server MAY choose one of those protocols (e.g., CoAP(s)/TCP) for software downloads.
2943 However, the Software Update Server SHALL support CoAP and block-wise transfer [RFC7959] for
2944 software downloads. Manufacturers SHOULD consider further aspects for secure software updates.
2945 Examples are how to manage a software update repository at the server side (which may include user
2946 interface considerations), the techniques to provide additional application layer security protection of the
2947 software package, how many versions of software images to store on the KNX IoT device, and how to
2948 execute the software update process considering the hardware specific details of a given KNX IoT
2949 product. These aspects are out-of-scope of this document.

2950 However, a KNX IoT device SHALL verify the authenticity and integrity of a software package before
 2951 applying a software package. Consequently, the software package SHALL contain package size,
 2952 authenticity, and integrity information, for example, in a manufacturer-specific header section. The
 2953 package size is used as an indication of when to start the software validation step.

2954 A device usually has memory for two software packages (active and non-active): the currently active
 2955 software and the newly uploaded software package or the previous (old) software package after the newly
 2956 uploaded package has been activated. The new software download overwrites the non-active package (see
 2957 swu/pkgname).

2958 Table 56 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL ("O") software update resources (swu) and
 2959 the corresponding resource path names that SHALL be used. (PUT) is OPTIONAL since the property
 2960 value is preconfigured or only one option is supported.

2961

Table 56 – Resources for software update

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|--------------------------|--------------|--------|----------|--|---|
| swu | :fb.swu | link-format | GET | M | Content-Format: application/link-format Payload: </a/swu>;ct=60, </swu/pkgname>;ct=60, </swu/pkgbytes>;ct=60, </swu/pkgv>;ct=60, </swu/update>;ct=60, </swu/state>;ct=60, </swu/result>;ct=60, </swu/lastupdate>;ct=60, </swu/method>;ct=60 | Response contains a list of points that belongs to the swu <i>Functional Block</i> . |
| a/swu | :dpt.file | octet-stream | PUT | M | Content-Format: "application/octet-stream" Payload: Manufacturer-specific binary file | Manufacturer-specific software package. It overwrites the oldest package version that exists on the device. |
| swu/pkgname | :dpt.varString8 859_1 | cbor | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: packagename } | The package name of the non-active software package. Returns response code "4.04 Not Found" if no non-active package is available (e.g., factory new device). |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------------|--------|--------------|---------|--|---|
| swu/pkgqurl | :dpt.url | cbor | GET (PUT) | O | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: swus.knx.local/firmware } | URL where to send a software update query request periodically. The URL format is defined in RFC 3986. The initial value of the mrt metadata value is 24 h (86 400 s) |
| swu/pkgbytes | :dpt.value 4uCount | cbor | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 96325 } | Indicates already saved bytes in the non-volatile memory of the software package. The value SHALL be >0 only while swu/state= Downloading. |
| a/swu | NA | cbor | POST | O | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: see clause 4.3, "Software Update Modes". | Triggers a software update query request (PULL on Software Update Server). |
| swu/pkgv | dpt.version | cbor | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: [1,2,3] } | The version of the newly available software package if the State resource is in state downloaded. Otherwise returns the response code "4.04 Not Found". |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|---------------------|--------|--------|----------|---|---|
| swu/update | :dpt.timePeriodSecZ | cbor | PUT | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 0 } | Trigger for upgrading the firmware. The value contains a defer period in seconds (0=update immediately, max="swu/maxdefer"). The resource is executable only when the swu/state resource is in the downloaded state (swu/pkgname contains a filename). GET = remaining time or Z8 status = OSV. If the download is ongoing, the device SHALL return a response code "4.00 Bad Request". |
| swu/state | :dpt.dldState | cbor | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 0 } | Indicates the current state concerning this software update. This value is set by the SWU. 0: Idle (before downloading or after successful updating) 1: Downloading (the data sequence is on the way) 2: Downloaded 3: If the "swu/update" is executed (true), the "swu/state" changes from Downloaded to Upgrading. If the update is successful, the "swu/state" changes to Idle. If the update fails, the status changes to Downloaded. |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|----------------|---------------------------|--------|--------|----------|--|---|
| swu/result | :dpt.updateResult | cbor | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 0 } | Contains the result of the software update or download. 0: Initial value. Once the updating process is initiated (Download /Update), this Resource SHALL be reset to the initial value. 1: Software updated successfully. 2: Not enough flash memory for the new software package. 3: Out of RAM during downloading process. 4: Connection lost during downloading process. 5: Integrity check failure for the newly downloaded package. 6: Unsupported package type. 7: Invalid URL. 8: Software update failed. 9: Unsupported protocol. |
| swu/lastupdate | :dpt.variableString8859_1 | cbor | GET | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 2020-04-12T2 3:2 0:50.52Z } | Time of the last software update according to IETF RFC 3339. Initial value: date of manufacturing. |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|---------------------|--------|--------------|----------|---|--|
| swu/method | :dpt.transferMethod | cbor | GET (PUT) | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 2 } | The KNX IoT device (SWU) uses this resource to indicate its support for transferring software images to the client either via the Package Resource (=push) or via the Package URI Resource (=pull) mechanism. 0: Pull only 1: Push only 2: Both. In this case, the Update Server MAY choose the preferred mechanism for conveying the software package to the KNX IoT Client. |
| swu/maxdefer | :dpt.timePeriodSec | cbor | GET PUT | O | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 0 } | Maximum Defer Period The maximum number of seconds a software update can be deferred. When this period is over, the device will automatically update a new package. If the value is 0, an automatic update is not allowed. |

| Resource path | rt & Data Types | Format | Method | Support | Request/Response | Notes |
|---------------|-----------------|--------|-----------|----------|---|---|
| swu/protocol | :dpt.protocols | cbor | GET (PUT) | M | Content-Format: application/cbor Payload: { 1: 0 } | Protocol configuration. The following list defines the protocol enumeration: 0: Unicast CoAP with the additional support for OSCORE (as defined in RFC 7252) and block-wise transfer. CoAP is the default setting. 1: CoAPS (as defined in RFC 7252) with optional support for block-wise transfer 2: CoAP with OSCORE over TCP (as defined in RFC 8323) 3: CoAP over TLS (as defined in RFC 8323) 254: Manufacturer specific |

2962

2963 4.3 Software Update Modes

2964 4.3.1 Overview

2965 KNX IoT defines the following two software download modes:

- 2966 • **PUSH:** The Software Update Server initiates the download and performs write operations on the
2967 a/swu resource. This usually means that the block-wise transfer prevents other CoAP requests on
2968 the KNX IoT device until the write operation completes.
- 2969 • **PULL:** the Software Update Server indicates from where the client should download the software
2970 package by configuring the "swu/pkgurl" (package URI) resource on the KNX IoT device. The
2971 KNX IoT device (client) then performs the download asynchronously while still being able to
2972 handle CoAP requests.

2973 Although the Software Update Manager selects the download method, it is **RECOMMENDED** to
2974 use **PULL** transfers exclusively during normal operation of an installation.

2975 Depending on the configured protocol, the corresponding access token configuration in the access control
2976 list **SHALL** be checked.

2977 4.3.2 Software Update Query Resource Object

2978 The following table defines the CBOR mapping for the different messages used for software updates
 2979 between Software Update Manager, Software Update Server, and the SWU *Functional Block* (KNX IoT
 2980 device). The attributes for these requests provide sufficient information to allow the KNX IoT device and
 2981 the Software Update Server to determine the availability of a new software package.

2982 A KNX IoT device firmware MAY be divided into several software packages. The KNX IoT device
 2983 SHOULD use the software package type ("pkg") to distinguish between firmware parts
 2984 (e.g., "communication stack package" or "application package" etc.) and, therefore, the software package
 2985 SHOULD contain the software package type information, for example, in the package header. The
 2986 definition of package types and software package structure (header, image segment) is manufacturer
 2987 specific.

2988 Table 57 specifies the MANDATORY ("M") or OPTIONAL ("O") attributes for a software update
 2989 resource object. If an attribute is marked as OPTIONAL, a client can omit the attribute in the request.
 2990 However, the server SHALL support the attribute handling.

2991

2992

Table 57 – Software Update Query Resource Object members

| JSON Key | CBOR Key | CBOR Type | Support | Description |
|-----------|----------|--------------------------------|------------|---|
| "pkgn" | 1 | map | - | Package notification object. |
| "pkgq" | 29 | map | - | Package query object. |
| "result" | 3 | unsigned | O | Package query result. |
| "mid" | 4 | unsigned | M | Manufacturer ID of the KNX IoT device (see "dev/manufid"). |
| "hwt" | 5 | unsigned | M | Software package product ID |
| "fwv" | 7 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned] | (M) | The current software version of the KNX IoT device (see "dev/fwv") in software update query request and response. |
| "prot" | 8 | unsigned | O | Supported download protocols (see "swu/protocol"). |
| "defer" | 9 | unsigned | O | Package update deferred period (see "swu/maxdefer") |
| "pkgv" | 10 | [unsigned, unsigned, unsigned] | (M) | New software package version (see "swu/pkgv") in the software update notification. |
| "pkgurl" | 11 | text string | O | Package URL (see "swu/pkgurl") of the update server. The URL MAY be preconfigured. |
| "pkgtype" | 12 | unsigned | O | Package type (manufacturer-specific number) |
| "pkgs" | 13 | unsigned | O | Package Size (kByte) |
| "po" | 14 | unsigned | O | Page offset (see clause 4.3.3) |
| "ps" | 15 | unsigned | O | Page size (see clause 4.3.3) |

2993

2994 **4.3.3 Software Update Query Parameter "p", "ps", and "pkg"**

2995 Software update query parameters provide the information about which part from a software update
 2996 package is written (PUSH mode) to the KNX IoT device or is requested (PULL mode) from the Software
 2997 Update Server.

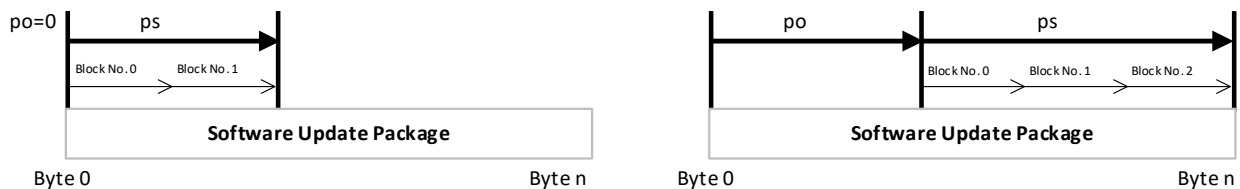
2998 In PUSH mode, the first PUT request to "a/swu" SHALL contain the query parameter "pkgs={bytes}"
 2999 indicating the total size of the software update package. In subsequent requests, the KNX IoT device
 3000 SHALL ignore the "pkgs=" query parameter.

3001 In PULL mode, the client indicates with the query parameter "ps={byte size}" in the GET request the
 3002 maximum file size (bytes) the device can handle in the response to the Software Update Server. If "ps" is
 3003 missing, common values from CoAP option Block1 and Block2 are used.

3004 The page offset "po" can be used in PULL mode (GET firmware) and in the PUT request to "a/swu" in
 3005 PUSH mode. The query parameter "po" defines the number of bytes to skip. If "po" is omitted in the
 3006 request, then the default offset SHALL be 0.

3007 The following picture depicts a software update package that is split into two independent byte chunks.
 3008 The first byte chunk starts at the beginning of the software update package (po=0). After receiving the
 3009 first byte chunk, the software update continues with the next byte chunk and an offset "po" (po=<received
 3010 bytes>). The page size "ps" is transferred to the device with CoAP block-wise transfer, and each "ps" byte
 3011 chunk SHALL start with block number 0.

3012



3013
 3014

Figure 28 – Software Package Query Parameter

3015 The following example shows a KNX IoT request that starts with an offset of 2056 bytes and indicates
 3016 that it can handle a maximum of 1028 bytes.

```

Read software update package chunk from Software Update Server (incl. block-wise transfer).

REQ:
GET coap://{ipv6-unicast}/firmware?po=2056&ps=1028
(Content-Format: application/octet-stream (42), block num 0 (block size: 64))
Payload:
Uiow578oiqwhtq8745

RES:
2.04 CHANGED
    
```

3017

3018 **4.3.3.1 Resume Software Update**

3019 Software update packages are often multiple kilobytes, sometimes exceeding one hundred kilobytes in
 3020 size. If, for some reason, a software update is interrupted, like a disruption in connectivity or a device
 3021 losing power, the software update needs a mechanism to resume interrupted transfers.

3022 Suppose a KNX IoT device wants to continue reading a software package (PULL mode) from a Software
 3023 Update Server, for example after a device restart, the device SHOULD request the next byte chunk with a
 3024 byte offset "po" after the last successfully received byte ("swu/pkgbytes").

3025 If a Software Update manager wants to resume an interrupted transfer, then it SHOULD read from the
3026 KNX IoT device the number of bytes already saved in nonvolatile memory ("swu/pkgbytes") and
3027 continue from there.

3028 The Software Update Manager using PUSH mode SHALL indicate where to append byte chunks with
3029 "po" (po={"swu/pkgbytes"}) in the PUT request to "a/swu" or with a software notification request in
3030 PULL mode (see clause 4.3.4.2).

3031 **4.3.4 Software Update PULL**

3032 **4.3.4.1 Basic requirements**

3033 KNX IoT devices MAY support Software Update PULL. If the PULL method is configured, then the
3034 KNX IoT device SHALL support Software Update Notifications if the Software Update Manager wants
3035 to trigger the software update process.

3036 In addition, the SWU *Functional Block* MAY support checking the configured Software Update Server
3037 periodically with a Software Update Query for new software packages. The Software Update Server
3038 SHALL support block-wise transfer [RFC7959] since this is the mandatory software update transfer
3039 format for a KNX IoT device.

3040 It is RECOMMENDED that sleepy KNX IoT devices make their best effort to optimize their wake-up
3041 intervals to optimize battery live time or other constrained power sources while retrieving a new software
3042 package. Therefore, KNX IoT devices SHOULD support block-wise transfer to recover and continue the
3043 download without having to start from the beginning of a given software package (see 4.3.5, "Software
3044 Update PUSH", e.g., "swu/pkgbytes"). This takes more time to complete the download process and
3045 SHALL be considered by the Software Update Manager, for example, if it wants to trigger the software
3046 update and restart all KNX IoT devices of a given installation simultaneously.

3047 Since the SWU *Functional Block* MAY need to read the Software package in parts, it is
3048 RECOMMENDED that Software Update Servers maintain the cached package for at least 10 minutes
3049 after closure of the last package transfer so that the SWU *Functional Block* MAY come back to read
3050 different parts of a package file.

3051 Software Update Clients SHALL abort retrying a transfer after three attempts and retry with a standard
3052 software update query request (e.g., "check available software" after 24h). The resulting error SHALL be
3053 logged in the "swu/result" Point.

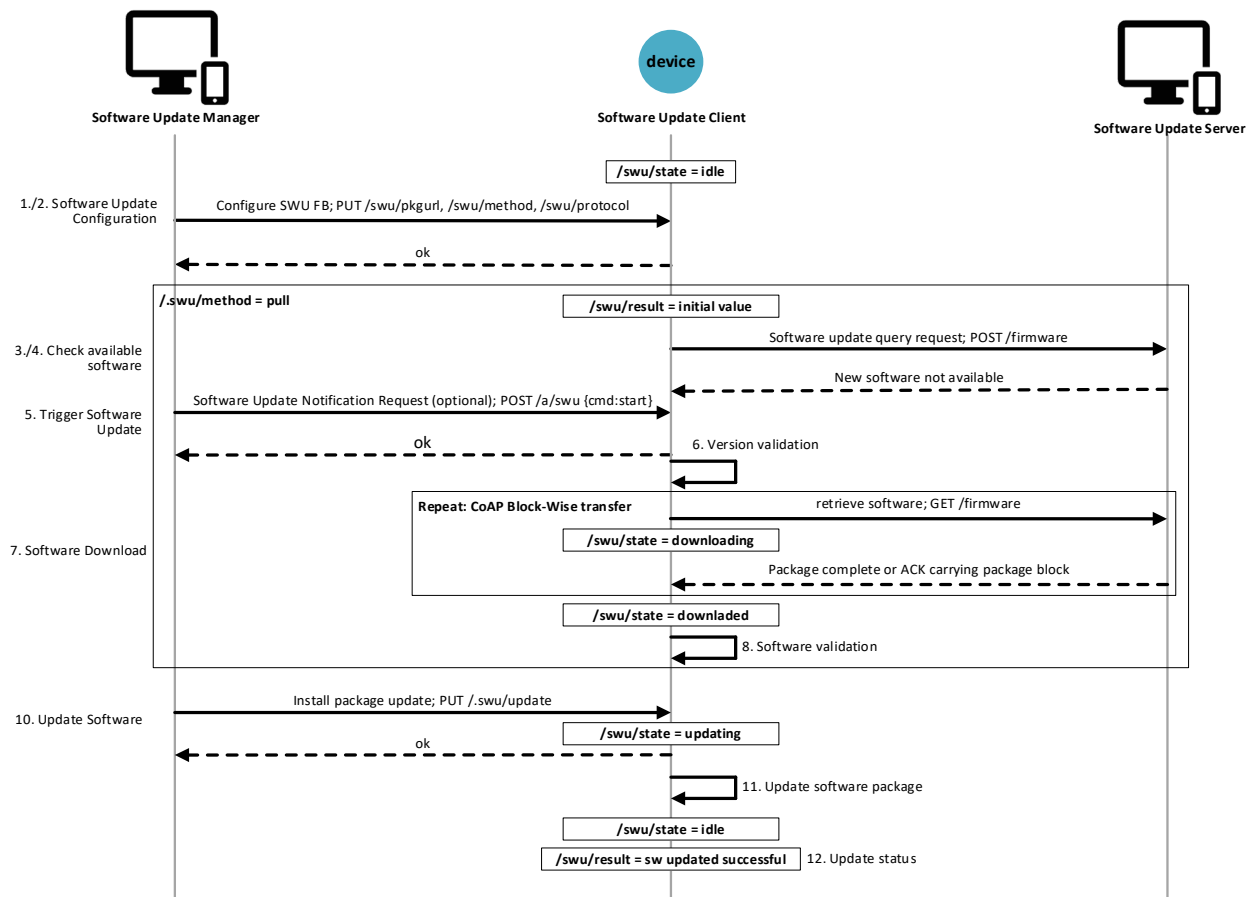


Figure 29 – Software Update PULL

3054
3055

3056 The example depicted in the previous figure illustrates a successful message exchange between Software
3057 Update Manager/Server and a KNX IoT device. In this example, no messages are lost during
3058 transmission:

- 3059
- 3060 1. Software Update Manager configures the Software Update Server and PULL as an update
 - 3061 method on the KNX IoT Client. This configuration can be done with a MaC over CoAP or out-
 - 3062 of-band (e.g., NFC or BLE, etc.). In the case of CoAP, the Software Update Manager MAY
 - 3063 have a configured device list or MAY discover KNX IoT devices, for example, with mDNS.
 - 3064 2. KNX IoT device determines Software Update Server to query ("`swu/pkgurl`").
 - 3065 3. KNX IoT device periodically checks for available software packages and queries the Software
 - 3066 Update Server for a new version.
 - 3067 4. If Software Update Server has no new software available, then retry after the heartbeat period
 - 3068 expires (see metadata). Else, continue with 6.
 - 3069 5. OPTIONAL: Software Update Manager triggers the KNX IoT device to start immediately with
 - 3070 the software download.
 - 3071 6. The KNX IoT device validates whether to apply the new software version.
 - 3072 7. KNX IoT device downloads the software package with the configured protocol
 - 3073 ("`swu/protocol`"), for example, with CoAP block-wise transfer (default) in chunks suitable to the
 - 3074 maximum transmission size (MTU) or the adaption-layer fragmentation (e.g., 60-80 bytes for
 - 3075 6LoWPAN).
 8. KNX IoT device validates the new software package (e.g., manufacturer signature, etc.)

- 3076 9. OPTIONAL: KNX IoT device notifies (with subscription) the Software Update Server that the
 3077 download is complete and it is ready to apply the downloaded software package ("swu/state" =
 3078 downloaded).
- 3079 10. Software Update Manager triggers the KNX IoT device to apply the software package.
- 3080 11. KNX IoT device applies the software package.
- 3081 12. KNX IoT device notifies (read or with Point Subscription) the Software Update Manager of
 3082 having successfully applied the software package ("swu/result" = sw updated successfully).

3083 4.3.4.2 Software Update Notification

3084 Installations often have many of the same KNX IoT devices (same product and version). The Software
 3085 Update Servers SHOULD avoid redownloading the same software package if it can determine that
 3086 multiple KNX IoT devices are requesting or can be expected to request the same software package.

3087 The software update notification command is used if a Software Update Manager wants to control or
 3088 force the rollout of new software packages. The software update notification command SHALL contain
 3089 the following attributes from Table 57:

- 3090 • mid: software package manufacturer ID
- 3091 • hwt: software package product ID
- 3092 • pkgv: version of the new available package

3093 The software update notification command MAY contain the following attribute:

- 3094 • pkg: software package type
- 3095 • pkgurl: the URL from where to fetch new software package.
- 3096 • pkgs: file size of the software package [kByte]
- 3097 • defer: deferred software package installation after download.
- 3098 • prot: Supported protocols for software download (default CoAP with OSCORE)
- 3099 • po: Page offset (see clause 4.3.3)
- 3100 • ps: Page size (see clause 4.3.3)

3101 The following example does not contain a Package Update Deferred Period (defer) attribute; therefore,
 3102 the package update SHALL NOT be installed automatically. In this case, the Software Update Manager
 3103 wants to apply the new software package by sending a separate request to "swu/update" afterward. The
 3104 following example uses the JSON Content-Format for readability:

Software Update Notification example (new software update available).

```

REQ:
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/a/swu
(Content-Format: application/json (50), Accept: application/json (50), OSCORE(code(PUT), kid(<osc-id>)))
Payload:
{
  "cmd": "start",
  "pkg": {
    "mid": 123, "hwt": 0x456AB, "pkg": 0, "pkgv": [1,2,3], "pkgs": 23, "prot": [6],
    "pkgurl": "coap://swus.knx.local/firmware:61630" }
}

RES:
2.04 CHANGED

```

3105

3106 **4.3.4.3 Software Update Query**

3107 The KNX IoT device MAY check periodically for new available software packages by default. However,
 3108 it SHALL be possible to disable automatic software updates and checks ("swu/pkgurl"— metadata:
 3109 heartbeat=0). If supported, then the SWU *Functional Block* SHOULD configure at least a minimal
 3110 heartbeat of 24 hours and a maximum of three retries, for example, if the server does not reply, between
 3111 two query requests per Software Update Server, unless a KNX IoT device loses its time, due to power
 3112 loss or restart, etc. This reduces the burden on the Software Update Server, providing the service to many
 3113 devices and supporting networking infrastructure.

3114 Suppose the Software Update Server cannot immediately respond since it is busy; the server SHALL
 3115 return response code "5.03 Service Unavailable" but uses the Max-Age option to indicate the number of
 3116 seconds after which to retry.

3117 The update notification query request SHALL contain the following attributes from Table 57:

- 3118 • mid: software package manufacturer ID
- 3119 • hwt: software package product ID
- 3120 • hww: device hardware version
- 3121 • fww: device software or firmware version.

3122 The update notification query request MAY contain the following attributes:

- 3123 • pkg: software package type
- 3124 • The update notification query response SHALL contain the following attribute: result: query
 3125 result. The following example uses the JSON Content-Format for readability:

| Software Update Query example (software update not available). |
|--|
| <p>REQ: POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/firmware (Content-Format: application/json (50), Accept: application/json (50), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>))) Payload: <pre>{ "pkgq": { "mid": 123, "hwt": 0x456AB, "pkg": 0, "hww": [1,2,3], "fww": [2,3,4] } }</pre></p> <p>RES: 2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/json (50)) Payload: <pre>{ "result": 0 }</pre></p> |

3126

3127 It may happen that during package query or package download, the SWU *Functional Block* encounters
 3128 error conditions that eventually succeed through retrying the same operation more than once. Hence, the
 3129 SWU *Functional Block* will repeat a Software Update Query request. Even if the Software Update Server
 3130 can detect this, it SHALL NOT behave differently on any subsequent attempt compared to the first,
 3131 unless a new software package becomes available in the meantime.

3132 If the new software update is available, then the update query response SHALL contain the following
 3133 attributes from Table 57:

- 3134 • mid: software package manufacturer ID
- 3135 • hwt: software package product ID

- 3136 • pkg: software package type
- 3137 • pkgv: version of the newly available software package.
- 3138 • pkgs: file size of the new software package [kByte]
- 3139 • pkgurl: the URL from where to fetch the new software package.
- 3140 • result: query result.

3141 The update notification response MAY contain the following attribute:

- 3142 • defer: deferred software package installation after download.

3143 The following Software Update Query example defines a Package Update Deferred Period (defer) of 0
 3144 seconds in the response. Hence, the KNX IoT device SHALL automatically install the new software
 3145 package after the download, except "swu/maxdefer" is set to 0. If defer is absent, the new software
 3146 package SHALL NOT be installed automatically. The following example uses the JSON Content-Format
 3147 for readability:

Software Update Query example (new software update available).

```

REQ:
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/firmware
(Content-Format: application/json (50), Accept: application/json (50), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))
Payload:
{
  "pkgq": {
    "mid": 123, "hwt": 0x0123AB, "pkg": 0, "hvw": [1,2,3], "fwv": [2,3,4], "prot": 6 }
}

RES:
2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/json (50))
Payload:
{
  "result": 1,
  "pkg": {
    "mid": 123, "hwt": 0x0123AB, "pkg": 0, "pkgv": [1,2,3], "pkgs": 23,
    "pkgurl": "coap://swus.knx.local/firmware:61630" }
}

```

3148

3149 4.3.5 Software Update PUSH

3150 Software Update PUSH simplifies the KNX IoT device and puts the update logic to the Software Update
 3151 Manager. Resource-constrained devices MAY NOT be able to implement Software Update PULL. In
 3152 addition, with Software Update PUSH, the entire update process is managed by the Software Update
 3153 Manager, including package downloads. The Software Update Manager can optimize the process, such as
 3154 subsequent dynamic loads of packets based on a broader range of information. Therefore, a KNX IoT
 3155 device SHALL support Software Update PUSH.

3156 In the "PUSH" as well as in the "PULL" scenario, the KNX IoT device SHALL sum up the transmitted
 3157 bytes until the last message that has been successfully received and SHOULD store this information into
 3158 non-volatile memory ("swu/pkgbytes") before power-down. When a new data packet PUSH or PULL
 3159 operation begins, the information SHOULD be checked, and the update process SHOULD continue after
 3160 the last successfully stored message on the device.

3161 The KNX IoT device SHALL change to fast-poll or preferably to always-on mode after receiving the first
 3162 block of a software update package (PUT "a/swu") and make their best effort to optimize their wake-up
 3163 intervals.

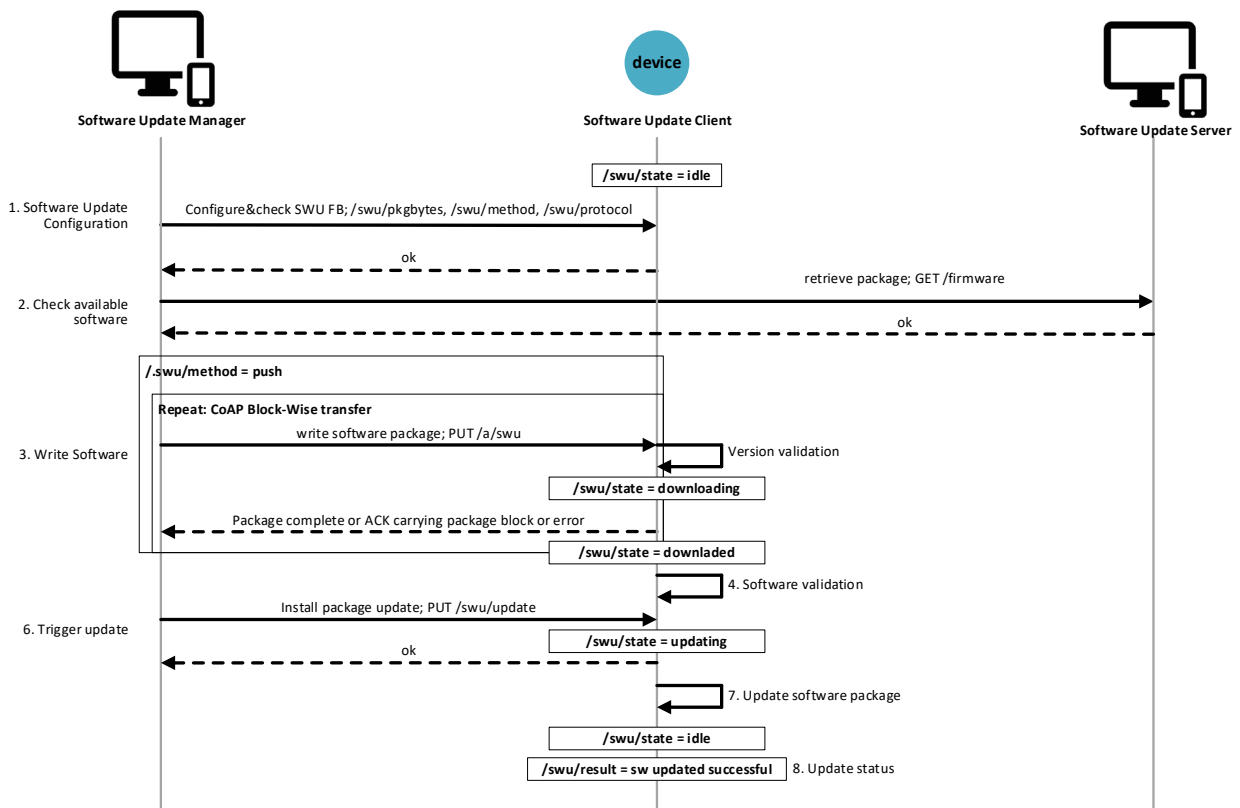


Figure 30 – Software Update PUSH

3164
3165

3166 The example depicted in the previous figure illustrates a successful message exchange between Software
3167 Update Manager and a KNX IoT device. It is RECOMMENDED to use confirmed requests for all unicast
3168 communication. In this example, no messages are lost during transmission:

- 3169 1. Software Update Manager configures PUSH as an update method on the KNX IoT Client. This
3170 configuration can be done with a MaC over CoAP or out-of-band (e.g., NFC, BLE, etc.). In the
3171 case of CoAP, the Software Update Manager MAY have a configured device list or MAY
3172 discover KNX IoT devices, for example, with mDNS.
- 3173 2. Software Update Manager periodically checks for available software packages and queries the
3174 Software Update Server for a new version.
- 3175 3. Software Update Manager writes a new software package to the KNX IoT device, for example,
3176 with CoAP block-wise transfer (default) in chunks suitable to the maximum transmission size
3177 (MTU) or the adaption-layer fragmentation (e.g., 60-80 bytes for 6LoWPAN).
- 3178 4. KNX IoT device validates the new software package (e.g., manufacturer signature, etc.).
- 3179 5. OPTIONAL: KNX IoT device notifies (with subscription) the Software Update Server that the
3180 download is complete and it is ready to apply the downloaded software package ("swu/state" =
3181 downloaded).
- 3182 6. Software Update Manager triggers the KNX IoT device to apply the software package.
- 3183 7. KNX IoT device applies the software package.
- 3184 8. KNX IoT device notifies (client reads "swu/result" = sw updated successfully) the Software
3185 Update Manager of having successfully applied the software package.

3186 **5 Profiles**3187 **5.1 KNX IoT Point API Device**3188 **5.1.1 Default Configuration State**

3189 Table 58 defines features and resources for KNX IoT that a device SHALL ("M") or MAY ("O", for
 3190 optional) support in the default configuration state according to [AN194]. A device in default
 3191 configuration state MAY have a preset application configuration but SHALL have no installation-specific
 3192 credential (security zone) configuration. Resources of the following device features SHALL be accessible
 3193 without security credentials in the default configuration state. For example, a device in default
 3194 configuration state SHALL reply to an "ep" (".well-known/core") device discovery.

3195 **Table 58 – Features in the default configuration state**

| Device Features | Support | Notes |
|---|---------|---|
| Device discovery with DNS-SD and "ep" | M | 2.6.1.2 "Device Discovery with DNS-SD" 2.6.1.3.6.1 "Endpoint Name "ep" Affected resources: GET /.well-known/core |
| Read IDevID | M | 3.3.1 "Manufacturer Device Certificates (IDeVID)" Affected resources: GET auth/idevid |
| OSCORE configuration with TOFU (Trust On First Use) | M | 3.6.3 "Password Authenticated Access Token Enrollment" Affected resources: POST /.well-known/knx/spake GET auth/at |
| LDeVID simple enrollment with EST (PULL) | O | 3.2.4 "Operational Device Certificate Enrollment (Pull Certificate)" Affected resources: a/sen |

3196

3197 **5.1.2 Commissioned Mode**

3198 Table 59 defines features for KNX IoT that a device SHALL ("M") or MAY ("O", for optional) support
 3199 in normal operation.

3200 **Table 59 – Features for normal operation**

| Device Features | Support | Notes |
|-------------------------------|---------|---|
| Device and resource discovery | M | 2.6.1 "Discovery" Affected resources: GET /.well-known/core |

| Device Features | Support | Notes |
|--|---------|---|
| Application Layer Security with pre-shared keys (if.sec) | M | 3.5.3 "Access Scope" 3.5.4 "Device Access Control List Resource (auth/at)" 3.6 "OSCORE Application Layer Security" Affected resources: GET, POST, DELETE auth/at/* GET auth/o (including OSCORE Properties in p/*) |
| Device individualization (if.sec, if.c) | M | 2.5.5.5 Device Individualization Resource (.well-known/knx/ia) Affected resources: POST /.well-known/knx/ia |
| Read/Write Points (if.p, if.d) | M | 2.5.11 "Parameter and Diagnostic Property Resource (p)" Affected resources: GET, PUT p/* |
| Pub/Sub with CoAP Observe (if.i, if.o) | M | 2.5.11 "Parameter and Diagnostic Property Resource (p)" 2.5.12 "Subscription Resource (sub)" Affected resources: GET + Observe p/* DELETE sub/ |
| Function Point Table configuration | M | 2.5.7 "Function Point Table (fp)" Affected resources: GET, POST, DELETE fp/*/* GET, POST a/lsm Function Point Publisher Table MAY NOT be supported on specific device types such as switches (e.g., sleepy devices) |
| S-Mode Group Communication (if.g.s) | M | 2.5.9 "S-Mode Messaging Resource (.knx)" Affected resources: POST .knx |
| Software update (PUSH) | M | 4.3.5 "Software Update PUSH" Affected resources: GET, PUT swu/* |
| LDevID Enrollment (PUSH) | O | 3.2.5 "Management Client as Registrar (Push Certificate)" Affected resources: auth/sen, or auth/skg |
| Transport Layer Security (if.sec) | O | 3.2 "Device Identity Enrollment" 3.3 "Device Identity Certificates" 3.4 "Certificate " 3.5.3 "Access Scope" 3.5.2 "Trust List Resource (auth/crts)" 3.5.5 "Revocation List" |

| Device Features | Support | Notes |
|------------------------|---------|---|
| Software update (PULL) | O | 4.3.4 "Software Update PULL" Affected resources: POST a/swu GET, PUT swu/* |

3201

3202 **5.1.3 Device Resource List**

3203

Table 60 – Device Resource List

| Resource path | Entity type | Interface | Content-Format | Method | Support | Description |
|----------------------------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|--------|----------------|---|
| Discovery | | | | | | |
| /.well-known/core | Collection | | link-format | GET | M | List with device functional blocks |
| /.well-known/core?ep= | Item | | link-format | GET | M | Device serial number |
| /.well-known/core?if= | Collection | | link-format | GET | M | Filter: Interfaces |
| /.well-known/core?rt= | Collection | | link-format | GET | M | Filter: Resource type |
| /.well-known/core?d= | Collection | | link-format | GET | M | Filter: Group address |
| Device | | | | | | |
| /.well-known/knx | Item | | cbor, json | GET | M | API version & base path |
| /.well-known/knx | Action | if.sec,if.c | cbor | POST | M | Device reboot and reset |
| /.well-known/knx/ia | Action | if.sec,if.c | cbor, (json) | POST | M | Device individualization |
| /.well-known/knx/f | Item | if.c | cbor, (json) | GET | M | Device configuration fingerprint |
| {base-path}/dev | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | M | List with device functional block Properties |
| {base-path}/dev/{property-id} | Item | if.d | cbor, (json) | GET | M | Read Property value |
| {base-path}/dev/{property-id} | Item | if.p | cbor, (json) | PUT | M | Write Property value |
| {base-path}/dev/{property-id}?m= | Item | if.d | cbor, (json) | GET | M ^a | Filter: Read a selected list of metadata values |
| {base-path}/dev/{property-id} | Item | if.p | cbor, (json) | PUT | M ^a | Write metadata value (with key) |
| {base-path}/ap | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | M | List with application program functional block Properties |
| {base-path}/ap/{property-id} | Item | if.d | cbor, (json) | GET | M | Read Property value |
| {base-path}/ap/{property-id} | Item | if.p | cbor, (json) | PUT | M | Write Property value |
| {base-path}/ap/{property-id}?m= | Item | if.d | cbor, (json) | GET | Ma | Filter: Read a selected list of metadata values |
| {base-path}/swu | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | M | List with software update functional block Properties |
| {base-path}/swu/{property-id} | Item | if.d | cbor, (json) | GET | M | Read Property value |
| {base-path}/swu/{property-id} | Item | if.swu | cbor, (json) | PUT | M | Write Property value |
| {base-path}/swu/{property-id}?m= | Item | if.d | cbor, (json) | GET | M ^a | Filter: Read a selected list of metadata values |
| {base-path}/swu/{property-id} | Item | if.p | cbor, (json) | PUT | O ^a | Write metadata value (with key) |
| Actions | | | | | | |
| {base-path}/a/swu | Action | if.swu | octet-stream | POST | O | Trigger firmware update PULL |
| {base-path}/a/lsm | Action | if.c | cbor | POST | M | Command Device Load State Machine |
| {base-path}/a/lsm | Item | if.c | cbor | GET | M | Device Load State Machine status |
| {base-path}/a/sen | Action | if.sec | cbor | POST | O | LDevID enrollment |

| Resource path | Entity type | Interface | Content-Format | Method | Support | Description |
|------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|--------|----------------|---|
| Security | | | | | | |
| /well-known/knx/spake | Item | | cbor | POST | M | PASE |
| /well-known/knx/spake | Item | if.sec | cbor | PUT | O | Password for device handover |
| /well-known/knx/idevid | Item | if.d | pkcs7-mime | GET | O | Read the manufacturer's device certificate |
| /well-known/knx/ldevid | Item | if.d | pkcs7-mime | GET | O | Write operational device certificate |
| {base-path}/auth | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | O | List with/ security sub-resource |
| {base-path}/auth/crts | Collection | if.sec,if.b | pkcs7-mime | POST | O | Write certificates |
| {base-path}/auth/crts | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | O | Read certificate list (link to resources) |
| {base-path}/auth/crts/{cert-id} | Item | if.sec | cbor | DELETE | O | Delete certificate |
| {base-path}/auth/at | Collection | if.sec | cbor | POST | M | Write access tokens |
| {base-path}/auth/at | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | M | Read access tokens list (link to resources) |
| {base-path}/auth/at/{token-id} | Item | if.sec | cbor | DELETE | M | Delete access token |
| {base-path}/auth/o | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | M | List with OSCORE functional block Properties |
| {base-path}/auth/o/{property-id} | Item | if.p | cbor, (json) | GET | M | Read Property value |
| {base-path}/auth/o/{property-id} | Item | if.sec | cbor, (json) | PUT | M | Write Property value |
| Messaging | | | | | | |
| /knx | Action | if.g.s | cbor | POST | M | KNX group communication |
| /knx | Event | if.g.s | cbor | GET | M | KNX group communication (CoAP Observe) |
| Function Point Tables | | | | | | |
| {base-path}/fp/g | Collection | if.c,if.b | cbor | POST | M | Add or change group object items |
| {base-path}/fp/g | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | M | Read group object list (link to resources) |
| {base-path}/fp/g/{group-object-id} | Item | if.p | cbor | GET | M | Read group object item |
| {base-path}/fp/g/{group-object-id} | Item | if.c | cbor | DELETE | M | Delete group object item |
| {base-path}/fp/r | Collection | if.c,if.b | cbor | POST | M | Add or change recipient items |
| {base-path}/fp/r | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | M | Read recipient list (link to resources) |
| {base-path}/fp/r/{recipient-id} | Item | if.d | cbor | GET | M | Read recipient item |
| {base-path}/fp/r/{recipient-id} | Item | if.c | cbor | DELETE | M | Delete recipient item |
| {base-path}/fp/p | Collection | if.c,if.b | cbor | POST | O | Add or change publisher items |
| {base-path}/fp/p | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | O | Read publisher list (link to resources) |
| {base-path}/fp/p/{publisher-id} | Item | if.d | cbor | GET | O | Write publisher item |
| {base-path}/fp/p/{publisher-id} | Item | if.c | cbor | DELETE | O | Delete publisher item |
| Functional blocks | | | | | | |
| {base-path}/f | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | M | Read functional block list (link to resources) |
| {base-path}/f/{fb-id-instance} | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | M | Read functional block property list (link to resources) |
| Properties | | | | | | |
| {base-path}/p | Collection | if.c, if.b | cbor, (json) | POST | M | Add or change Property items |
| {base-path}/p | Collection | if.ll | link-format | GET | O | Read Property list (link to resources) |
| {base-path}/p/{property-path} | Item | if.d | cbor, (json) | GET | M | Read Property item |
| {base-path}/p/{property-path}?lt= | Item | if.d | cbor, (json) | GET | M | Read Property item and observe with lifetime |
| {base-path}/p/{property-path} | Item | if.p | cbor, (json) | PUT | M | Write Property item |
| {base-path}/p/{property-path}?m= | Item | if.d | cbor, (json) | GET | M ^a | Filter: Read a selected list of metadata values |
| {base-path}/p/{property-path} | Item | if.p | cbor, (json) | PUT | O ^a | Write metadata value (with key) |
| Subscriptions | | | | | | |
| {base-path}/sub | Collection | if.p | cbor, (json) | DELETE | M | Delete all device subscriptions, including CoAP observe |

^a Resource contains metadata (see clause 2.5.11.3).

3205 **5.2 CBOR Encoding**

3206 **5.2.1 Function Point Tables, Functional Blocks, and Properties**

3207 **Table 61 – Function Point, Functional Block, and Property CBOR encoding**

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| cbor | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| json | id | value | cmd | status | sia | s | st | ga | cflag | |
| cbor | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 |
| json | url | href | ia | grpId | at | | | | | |
| cbor | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 |
| json | | | | | | fid | iid | | | pkgq |
| cbor | 100 (d) | 101 (e) | 102 (f) | 103 (g) | 104 (h) | 105 (i) | 106 (j) | 107 (k) | 108 (l) | 109 (m) |
| json | | | fault | | | | | | | |
| cbor | 110 (n) | 111 (o) | 112 (p) | 113 (q) | 114 (r) | 115 (s) | 116 (t) | 117 (u) | 118 (v) | 119 (w) |
| json | | overridden | | | | | | | | |

3208

3209 **5.2.2 Software Update Package Query**

3210 **Table 62 – Software Update CBOR encoding**

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| cbor | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| json | | pkgn | | result | mid | hwt | hwv | fwv | prot | defer |
| cbor | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 |
| json | pkgv | pkgurl | pkgt | pkgs | po | ps | | | | |
| cbor | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 |
| json | | | | | | | | | | |

3211

3212 **5.2.3 Security**

3213 **5.2.3.1 Access Token (RFC 8392)**

3214 **Table 63 – Access Token CBOR encoding**

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| cbor | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| json | id | iss | sub | | exp | nbf | iat | cti | cnf | scope |
| cbor | 30 | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 |
| json | | | | | | | | | profile | |

3215

3216 **5.2.3.2 Access Token Confirmation Methods (RFC 8747)**

3217 **Table 64 – Access Token Confirmation Methods**

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| cbor | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| json | | jwk | jwe | kid | osc | | | | | |

3218

3219 **5.2.3.3 OSCORE Key Configuration incl. PASE**3220 **Table 65 – OSCORE Key Configuration**

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| cbor | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| json | id | version | ms | hkdf | alg | salt | contextId | | pw | time |
| cbor | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 |
| json | pa | pb | pbkdf2 | cb | ca | rnd | it | | | |

3221

3222 **6 Examples**3223 **6.1 DEVICE POINT LIST EXAMPLES**3224 **6.1.1 Device Point List Example with OSCORE and (D)TLS**

| Resource Name | Interaction | rt & Data Types | if | Content-Format | Description |
|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|----------------|--|
| Common Services | | | | | |
| .well-known/core | ActionAffordance | | | link-format | Device and rt Discovery |
| .well-known/knx | ActionAffordance | | | cbor | Returns {prefix} |
| .well-known/knx/spake | ActionAffordance | | | cbor | PASE device bootstrapping |
| .well-known/knx/ia | ActionAffordance | | | cbor | Configure IA |
| .well-known/knx/f | PropertyAffordance | | | cbor | Returns a configuration fingerprint |
| Security | | | | | |
| auth | | | if.ll | link-format | |
| .well-known/knx/idevid | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.x509 | if.d | pkcs7-mime | Manufacturer Device Certificate (X.509) |
| .well-known/knx/ldevid | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.x509 | if.d | pkcs7-mime | Operational Device Certificate (X.509) |
| auth/crts | PropertyAffordance | | if.ll | link-format | Read list with certificate IDs |
| auth/crts | PropertyAffordance | | if.p if.sec | pkcs7-mime | Write CA Certificates |
| auth/at | PropertyAffordance | | if.ll | link-format | Read list with access token IDs (e.g., OSCORE Credentials) |
| auth/at | PropertyAffordance | | if.sec | cbor | Write access token IDs (e.g., OSCORE Credentials) |
| auth/at/{token-id} | PropertyAffordance | | if.sec | cbor | Write access token (e.g., OSCORE Credentials) |
| Device Object | | | | | |
| dev | | :fb.0 | if.ll | link-format | |
| dev/sn | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.0.11 :dpt.serNum | if.d | json/cbor | Device serial number |
| dev/mid | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.0.12 :dpt.value2Ucount | if.d | json/cbor | Manufacturer identifier |
| dev/hwv | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.version | if.d | json/cbor | Hardware version |
| dev/fwv | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.0.25 :dpt.version | if.d | json/cbor | Firmware version |
| dev/hwt | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.varString8859_1 | if.d | json/cbor | Hardware type |
| dev/model | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.0.15 :dpt.utf8 | if.d | json/cbor | Device model or order number |

| Resource Name | Interaction | rt & Data Types | if | Content-Format | Description |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|----------------|----------------|--|
| dev/sna | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.0.57 :dpt.value1Ucount | if.p | json/cbor | KNX Subnet Address |
| dev/da | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.0.58 :dpt.value1Ucount | if.p | json/cbor | KNX Device Address |
| dev/hname | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.varString8859_1 | if.p | json/cbor | Device hostname |
| dev/ipv6 | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.ipv6 | if.p | json/cbor | Device ipv6 addresses. |
| dev/fid | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.value8Ucount | if.p | json/cbor | KNX Fabric ID |
| dev/iid | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.value8Ucount | if.p | json/cbor | KNX Installation ID |
| dev/port | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.value2Ucount | if.p | json/cbor | Standard/default port number for unicast comm. |
| dev/mport | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.value2Ucount | if.p | json/cbor | Standard/default port number for multicast comm. |
| dev/pm | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.0.54 :dpt.binaryValue | if.p | json/cbor | Programming Mode |
| Application Program | | | | | |
| ap | | :fb.3 | if.ll | link-format | |
| ap/pv | | :dpa.3.13 :dpt.programVersion | if.d | cbor | Application Program version |
| SW Update (PUSH) | | | | | |
| swu | | :fb.swu | if.ll | link-format | |
| a/swu | ActionAffordance | | if.swu | octet-stream | Package file (firmware update PUSH) |
| swu/pkgname | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.varString8859_1 | if.swu if.d | cbor | Package file name |
| swu/pkgbytes | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.value4Ucount | if.swu | cbor | Transmitted and stored package bytes |
| swu/pkgv | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.version | if.swu if.d | cbor | Package version |
| swu/update | Action Affordance | :dpt.timePeriodSecZ | if.swu | cbor | Install package |
| swu/state | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.dldState | if.swu if.d | cbor | Update status |
| swu/result | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.updateResult | if.swu if.d | cbor | Update error |
| swu/lastupdate | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.varString8859_1 | if.swu if.d | cbor | Last successful package update |
| swu/method | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.transferMethod | if.swu if.d | cbor | Download method |
| swu/protocol | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.protocols | if.swu if.d | cbor | Download protocol |

| Resource Name | Interaction | rt & Data Types | if | Content-Format | Description |
|----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|--------------|------------------|---|
| Device Linking | | | | | |
| p | PropertyAffordance | | if.b if.c | cbor/json | Parameter and diagnose properties |
| fp/g | PropertyAffordance | | if.b if.c | cbor | Group object configuration |
| fp/r | PropertyAffordance | | if.b if.c | cbor | Recipient configurations |
| fp/p | PropertyAffordance | | if.b if.c | cbor | Publisher configuration |
| a/lsm | ActionAffordance | | if.c | cbor | Device Load state Machine |
| S-Mode Messaging | | | | | |
| .knx | ActionAffordance | | if.g.s | cbor | KNX S-Mode Group Notification Input |
| .knx | EventAffordance | | if.g.s | cbor | KNX S-Mode Group Notification Output |
| Heat Valve Actuator | | | | | |
| hva | | :fb.352 | if.ll | link-format | |
| p/hva/actpossetpheatstagea | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.352.51 :dpt.scaling | if.i | json/cbor | Actuator Position Set Point Heat Stage A |
| p/hva/actposheatstagea | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.352.55 :dpt.scaling | if.o | json/cbor | Actuator Position Heat Stage A |
| User HVAC Display | | | | | |
| f/uhd | | :fb.390 | if.ll | application-link | |
| p/uhd/temproomsetpabseff | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.390.59 :dpt.valueTemp | if.p | json/cbor | Absolute Effective Room Temperature Set Point |
| Room Temperature Sensor | | | | | |
| f/rts | | :fb.321 | if.ll | link-format | |
| p/rts/temproom | PropertyAffordance | :dpa.321.51 :dpt.valueTemp | if.o | json/cbor | Measured Room Temperature |
| Manufacturer-specific | | | | | |
| f/devtype/ | PropertyAffordance | | if.ll | link-format | |
| p/devtype/batterylow | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.binaryValue | if.d | json/cbor | Battery Status |
| p/devtype/inlinkmargin | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.value1Ucount | if.d | json/cbor | In Link Margin |
| p/devtype/batteryuptime | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.timePeriodHrs | if.d | json/cbor | Uptime Battery |
| p/devtype/wakeupcycle | PropertyAffordance | :dpt.timePeriodSec | if.p | json/cbor | Wake Up Cycle Controller |

3225

3226 **6.2 DEVICE CONFIGURATION EXAMPLE**3227 **6.2.1 Full Download Example**

3228 In the first step, the MaC checks the device compatibility with the product database.

STEP 1: Check MaC DB entry compatibility with the KNX IoT device.**REQ:**

```
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/dev/hwt
(OSCORE(code(GET), kid(<osc-id>)))
```

RES:

```
2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))
```

Payload:

```
{
  1: "0123AB" //value: "01234AB"
}
```

3229

3230 Continue with the next steps only if the compatibility check is successful.

STEP 2: Set Device Load State Machine to "unload".**REQ:**

```
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/a/lsm
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))
```

Payload:

```
{
  2: 4 //cmd: unload
}
```

3231

3232 If the KNX IoT device supports the intermediate state "unloading", then it may answer with the state
3233 "unloading". The MaC SHALL NOT continue before the KNX IoT has reached the state "unloaded".**STEP 3: Set Device Load State Machine to "loading".****REQ:**

```
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/a/lsm
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))
```

Payload:

```
{
  2: 1 //cmd: startloading
}
```

3234

3235 The MaC writes Function Point Table items to the KNX IoT device (see clause 2.6.7, "Creating,
3236 Updating, and Deleting Resources").

STEP 4: Write parameter configuration.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/p

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    11: "p/rts/defaultsetpoint",
    1: 21,
  },
  {
    11: "p/rts/availablemodes",
    1: [1, 2, 3]
  },
  ...
]
```

3237

STEP 5: Write Group Object Table.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/g

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 13,           //id
    11: "/ldsb1/soo", //href
    7: [2305, 2401], //ga
    8: 216           //cflag: 0b11011000
  },
  {
    0: 14,
    11: "/LDSB1/RSC",
    7: [2306],
    8: 64           //cflag: 0b01000000
  },
  {
    0: 15,
    11: "/ldsb2/soo",
    7: [2307, 2401],
    8: 216           //cflag: 0b11011000
  },
  {
    0: 16,
    11: "/ldsb2/rsc",
    7: [2308],
    8: 64           //cflag: 0b01000000
  }
]
```

3238

STEP 6: Write Function Point Publisher Table.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/p

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 11,                //id
    12: <publisher's IA>, //ia
    7: [2305, 2306, 2307, 2308] //ga
  },
  {
    0: 12,                //id
    10: "coap://<IP multicast, unicast address or fqdn>:<port>/<path>", //url
    7: [2305, 2306, 2307, 2308] //ga
  }
]
```

3239

STEP 7: Write Function Point Recipient Table.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/r

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 9,                //id
    12: <recipient's IA>, //ia
    7: [2305, 2306, 2307, 2308] //ga
  },
  {
    0: 10,                //id
    10: "coap://<IP multicast, unicast address or fqdn>:<port>/<path>", //url
    7: [2305, 2306, 2307, 2308] //ga
  }
]
```

3240

STEP 8: Write the Application Program version.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/ap/pv

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(PUT), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
{
  1: [250, 825, 16]
}
```

3241

STEP 9: Set Device Load State Machine to "loaded".**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/a/lsm

(Content-Format: application/cbor (50), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
{
  2: 2  //cmd: loadcomplete
}
```

3242

3243

3244

3245

If the intermediate state "LoadCompleting" is supported by the KNX IoT device, then it may answer with the state "LoadCompleting". The MaC SHALL NOT continue before the KNX IoT device has reached the state "loadcomplete".

STEP 10: Read the configuration fingerprint of the written resources.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx/f

(OSCORE(code(GET), kid(<osc-id>)))

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

```
{
  1: 132768923564196
}
```

3246

3247

The retrieved fingerprint MAY be stored by the MaC for a future decision about a differential download.

3248

3249

Finally, the MaC MAY restart the device to cause a reset of the communication system (e.g., device group table) in the before-configured device (see clause 2.5.5.3.3, "(Basic) Restart Command").

STEP 11: Restart device (optional).**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
{
  2: "restart"
}
```

3250

3251 6.2.2 Partial Download Example

3252 In the first step, the MaC checks the device compatibility with the product database.

STEP 1: Check the MaC DB entry compatibility of the KNX IoT device.

REQ:

```
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/dev/hwt
(OSCORE(code(GET), kid(<osc-id>)))
```

RES:

```
2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))
```

Payload:

```
{
  1: "0123AB" //value: "0123AB"
}
```

3253

3254 Continue with the next steps only if the compatibility check is successful.

STEP 2: Check if the KNX IoT device is in a known state.

REQ:

```
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx/f
(OSCORE(code(GET), kid(<osc-id>)))
```

RES:

```
2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))
```

Payload:

```
{
  1: 132768923564196
}
```

3255

3256 If the MaC knows the device configuration fingerprint value, then the MaC MAY continue with a
3257 differential download. Otherwise, the MaC SHALL start with the full download and continue with STEP
3258 2.

STEP 3: Set Device Load State Machine to "loading".

REQ:

```
POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/a/lsm
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))
```

Payload:

```
{
  2: 1 //cmd: startloading
}
```

3259

STEP 4: Write parameter configuration (conditional: only if changes there).**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/p

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    11: "p/rts/defaultsetpoint", //href
    1: 21,                       //value
  },
  {
    11: "p/rts/availablemodes", //href
    1: [1, 2, 3]                //value
  },
  ...
]
```

3260

3261

The MaC MAY write only changed parameters (identified by href).

STEP 5: Write Group Object Table (conditional: only if changes there).**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/g

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 13,                       //id
    11: "/ldsb1/soo",           //href
    7: [2305, 2401],            //ga
    8: 216                       //cflag: 0b11011000
  },
  {
    0: 14,                       //id
    11: "/ldsb1/rsc",           //href
    7: [2306],                  //ga
    8: 64                         //cflag: 0b01000000
  },
  {
    0: 15,                       //id
    11: "/ldsb2/soo",           //href
    7: [2307, 2401],            //ga
    8: 216                       //cflag: 0b11011000
  },
  {
    0: 16,                       //id
    11: "/ldsb2/rsc",           //href
    7: [2308],                  //ga
    8: 64                         //cflag: 0b01000000
  }
]
```

3262

3263

The MaC MAY write only changed group objects (identified by "id").

STEP 6: Write Function Point Publisher Table (conditional: only if changes there).**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/p

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 11,                //id
    12: "<publisher's IA>", //ia
    7: [2305, 2306, 2307, 2308] //ga
  },
  {
    0: 12,                //id
    10: "coap://<IP multicast, unicast address or fqdn>:<port>/<path>", //url
    7: [2305, 2306, 2307, 2308] //ga
  },
  {
    0: 13                //id
  }
]
```

3264
3265
3266

The MaC MAY write only changed table entries (identified by "id"). Entries with a new "id" will create a new entry.

STEP 7: Write Function Point Recipient Table (conditional: only if changes there).**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/fp/r

(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
[
  {
    0: 9,                //id
    12: "<recipient's IA>", //ia
    7: [2305, 2306, 2307, 2308] //ga
  },
  {
    0: 10,                //id
    10: "coap://<IP multicast, unicast address or fqdn>:<port>/<path>", //url
    7: [2305, 2306, 2307, 2308] //ga
  }
]
```

3267
3268
3269
3270

The MaC MAY write only changed table entries (identified by "id"). Entries with a new "id" will create a new entry.

STEP 8: Write the Application Program version.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/ap/pv
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(PUT), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
{  
  1: [250, 825, 16]  
}
```

3271

STEP 9: Set Device Load State Machine to "loaded".**REQ:**

POST coap://{ip-unicast}/a/lsm
(Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
{  
  2: 2 //loadcomplete  
}
```

3272

3273

3274

3275

If the intermediate state "loadcompleting" is supported by the KNX IoT device, it MAY answer with the state "loadcompleting". The MaC SHALL NOT continue before the KNX IoT device has reached the state "loadcomplete".

STEP 10: Read the configuration fingerprint of the written resources.**REQ:**

POST coap://{ip-unicast}/.well-known/knx/f
(OSCORE(code(GET), kid(<osc-id>)))

RES:

2.05 CONTENT (Content-Format: application/cbor (60))

Payload:

```
{  
  1: 132768923564196  
}
```

3276

3277

3278

3279

The MaC MAY store the retrieved checksum for a future decision about a differential download.

Finally, the MaC MAY restart the device to cause a reset of the communication system (e.g., device group table) in the before-configured device.

STEP 11: Restart device (optional).

REQ:

POST coap://{ipv6-unicast}/.well-known/knx
 (Content-Format: application/cbor (60), OSCORE(code(POST), kid(<osc-id>)))

Payload:

```
{
  2: "restart"
}
```

3280

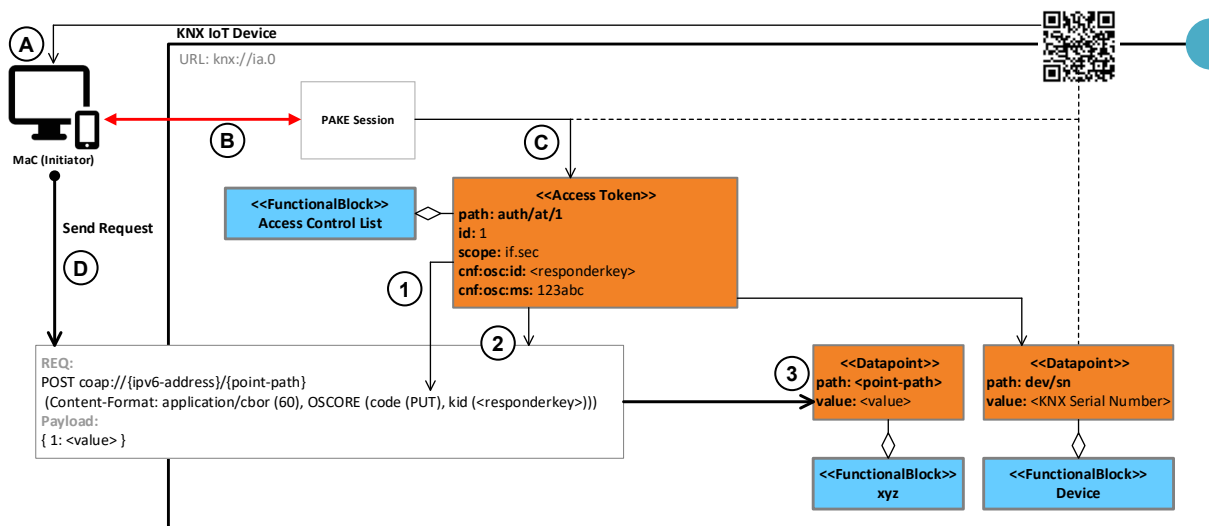
3281 **6.3 DATA ENCRYPTION/DECRYPTION EXAMPLE**

3282 **6.3.1 OSCORE Unicast**

3283 The following clauses describe the OSCORE message content from clause 3.6.5, "Message Processing".

3284 **6.3.1.1 PASE Example**

3285 The following figure shows how a PASE access token for the responder key is created and from where
 3286 the message content is taken for decrypting an incoming message:



3287

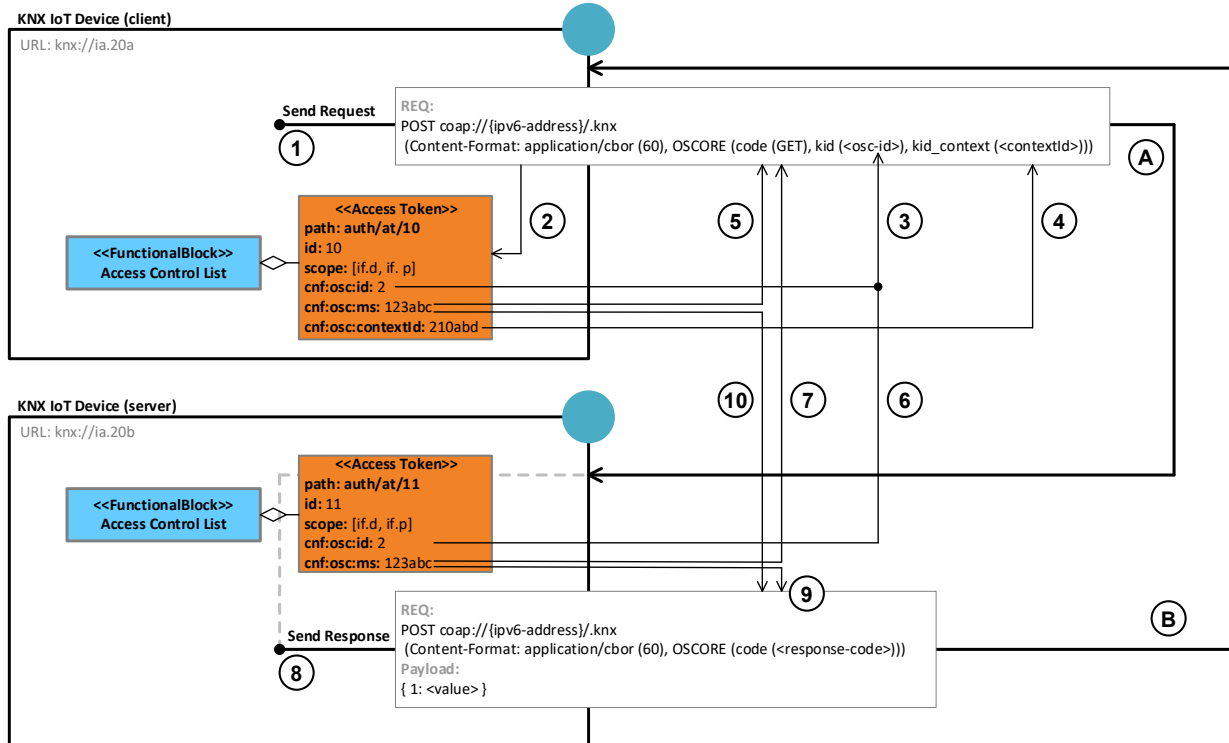
3288

Figure 31 – PAKE-based OSCORE Credential Configuration Example

- 3289 • A: The MaC gets the *KNX Serial Number*, for example, from a QR-Code.
- 3290 • B: The MaC and the KNX IoT device derive a new shared secret for the PASE session (see
- 3291 3.6.3).
- 3292 • C: The KNX IoT device creates a new access token valid for this PASE session. The derived
- 3293 shared secret for the PASE session is temporarily stored in an access token. (cnf:osc:ms)
- 3294 • D: The MaC uses the secret for encoding the OSCORE message (unicast).
- 3295 • 1: The KNX IoT device searches the access token with the same OSCORE input material
- 3296 identifier (osc-id = cnf:osc:id) as the OSCORE "kid" of the message (<rkey>).
- 3297 • 2: The OSCORE cryptographic parameters from the corresponding access token are used for
- 3298 message decryption.
- 3299 • 3: If the client has permissions (see scope), the KNX IoT device writes the value to the
- 3300 corresponding Point.

3301 **6.3.1.2 Unicast Read/Write Point Example**

3302 The next figure depicts a request/response message flow between a KNX IoT client and server device:



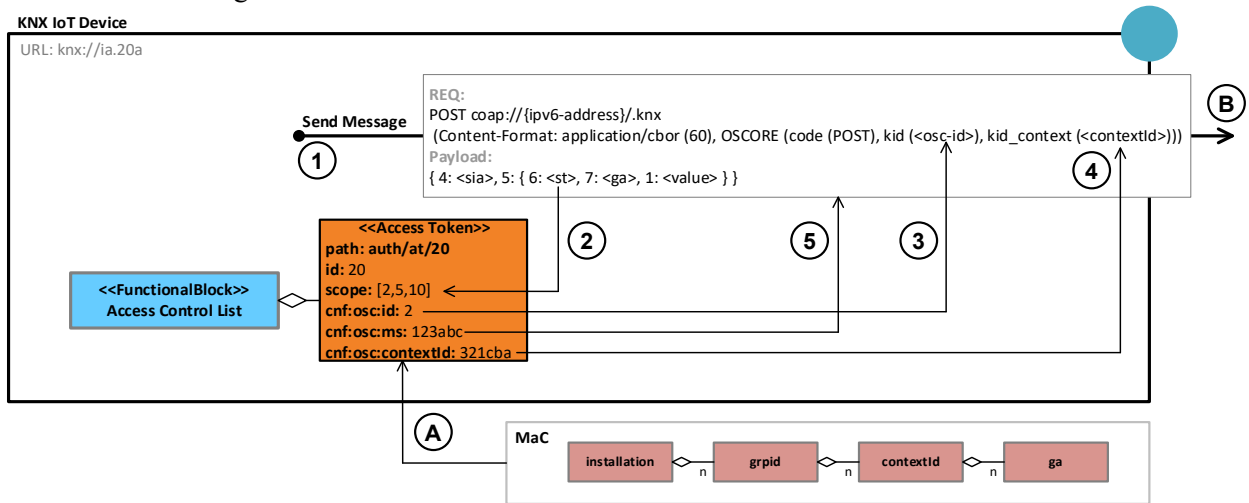
3303 **Figure 32 –Unicast OSCORE Request/Response Example**

- 3305 • 1: The KNX IoT device (client) wants to send a request to a KNX IoT server.
- 3306 • 2: The KNX IoT device queries the Function Point Table containing the corresponding access
- 3307 token.
- 3308 • 3: The KNX IoT device prepares the request message and uses the OSCORE input material
- 3309 identifier (osc-id = cnf:osc:id) of the access token as the message OSCORE "kid".
- 3310 • 4: The KNX IoT device adds the OSCORE "contextId" from the access token to the message
- 3311 OSCORE "kid_context" to avoid message duplications.
- 3312 • 5: The OSCORE cryptographic parameters are used for message encryption.
- 3313 • A: The KNX IoT device sends the encrypted message to the server.
- 3314 • 6: The KNX IoT device (server) queries the access control list and searches the corresponding
- 3315 access token item containing the same OSCORE input material identifier (osc-id = cnf:osc:id) as
- 3316 in the OSCORE "kid" in the message.
- 3317 • 7: The OSCORE cryptographic parameters are used for message decryption.
- 3318 • 8: The server checks client permissions and replies accordingly.
- 3319 • 9: The OSCORE cryptographic parameters are used for message encryption. The KNX IoT
- 3320 device (server) uses an empty byte string for the OSCORE sender ID (kid = h").
- 3321 • B: The KNX IoT device sends the encrypted response message to the client.
- 3322 • 10: The KNX IoT device (client) queries pending request sessions and the corresponding
- 3323 credentials for decrypting the unicast response.

3324 **6.3.2 OSCORE Multicast**

3325 **6.3.2.1 Multicast S-Mode Example**

3326 The following figure explains from which Points message content is taken before encrypting and sending
 3327 an OSCORE message:



3328

3329

Figure 33 –Multicast OSCORE S-Mode Example

- 3330 • A: The MaC configures access tokens on a KNX IoT device. The access token contains the
 3331 OSCORE credentials with the necessary information for message encryption and decryption. The
 3332 same access token can be used for multiple *Group Addresses* ("ga") belonging to the same
 3333 OSCORE input material identifier (osc-id = cnf:osc:id).
 - 3334 • 1: The KNX IoT device wants to send a message because a value has changed on a Point
 3335 configured in the Group Object Table. After checking the Function Point Table, the message gets
 3336 the group address ("ga").
 - 3337 • 2: The Function Point Publisher or Recipient table item with the corresponding *Group Adresse*
 3338 ("ga") contains a reference to the corresponding access token in the access control list.
 - 3339 • 3: The OSCORE input material identifier (osc-id = cnf:osc:id) of the access token is used for the
 3340 OSCORE message "kid".
 - 3341 • 4: The KNX IoT device adds the "kid_context" in the multicast message OSCORE "kid_context"
 3342 to avoid message duplications.
 - 3343 • 5: The OSCORE cryptographic parameters are used for message encryption.
 - 3344 • B: The message sequence number SHALL be stored on the receiving device for each security
 3345 context identified by the "kid" and the "kid_context". The Recipient handles the incoming
 3346 message as any other request (see also 6.3.1.2) but usually does not reply.
- 3347

3348

This page is reserved to list all endnotes.

3349

ⁱ JSON is used to denote contents in this paper. In practice, CBOR encoding is used.